

CONNECT PLUS 5

تصريح وتحت إشراف
MINISTRY OF EDUCATION AND TECHNICAL EDUCATION
وزارة التربية والتعليم والتعليم الفني

First Term
2023



General Revision on Connect Plus (4)

Revision on Structures



Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

Affirmative الإثبات	Negative النفي	Interrogative الإستفهام
I → like	I → don't like	Do → I like .... ?
He / She / It → likes	He / She / It → doesn't like	Does → he like .... ? / she like .... ? / it like............... ?
You / We / They → like	You / We / They → don't like	Do → you like .... ? / we like........... ? / they like .... ?

1 Choose the correct word(s):

1. He (don't – doesn't – isn't) like coffee.
2. Soha doesn't (came – comes – come) late for school.
3. Tamer (is go – go – goes) to the club on the weekend.
4. The lion (don't – doesn't – isn't) eat grass.
5. Do you (play – plays – playing) in the street?
6. Where (do – does – are) they go on holidays?
7 What does she (eats – eat – is eat) for lunch?
8. I (want – wants – wanting) to buy a new pair of trainers.
9. We (speaking – speaks – speak) English well.
10. Hend often (make – makes – making) her bed.

2 Correct the verbs in brackets:

1. We .... (not go) to the cinema at all.
2. The nurse always .... (help) doctors.
3. Where .... your father .... (work)?

4. It never .... (rain) in summer.
5. He sometimes .... (write) letters to his pen-friends.
6. Tamer .... (not shout) in class.
7. He usually .... (go) to school in his father's car.
8. When .... you .... (arrive) at school?
9. My friends and I .... (likes) having picnics.
10. She .... (brush) her teeth in the morning.

3 Change these sentences into negative:

1. Birds eat grass. ▶ ....
2. We go to school by taxi. ▶ ....
3. Aya lives by the sea. ▶ ....
4. She eats all her sandwiches. ▶ ....
5. Ahmed likes sweets. ▶ ....
6. I play football at home. ▶ ....
7. They have a big house. ▶ ....
8. He has a nice pet. ▶ ....
9. The monkey eats bananas. ▶ ....
10. I want to be a doctor. ▶ ....

4 Make questions as in the example:

1. Sameh rides his bike on Friday. ▶ Does Sameh ride his bike on Friday?
2. She wears a red dress. ▶ ....?
3. He sits next to the window. ▶ ....?
4. Magdy brushes his teeth in the morning. ▶ ....?
5. Cats drink milk. ▶ ....?
6. This dog makes noise. ▶ ....?
7. I visit my cousins on holidays. ▶ ....?
8. She goes to school on foot. ▶ ....?
9. I have lunch at school. ▶ ....?
10. We do our homework. ▶ ....?



Present Continuous Tense زمن المضارع المستمر

Affirmative الإثبات	Negative النفي	Interrogative الإستفهام
I → am reading	I → am not reading	Am → I reading ....?
He / She / It } is reading	He / She / It } isn't reading	Is { he reading ......? / she reading ....? / it reading ....?
You / We / They } are reading	You / We / They } aren't reading	Are { you reading ....? / we reading .....? / they reading...?

Key words ▶ look ▶ listen ▶ now ▶ at the moment

5 Choose the correct answer:

1. He's (have – has – having) a shower now.
2. Soha (does – is doing – do) her bed now.
3. She (cooking – cooks – is cooking) lunch now.
4. She's (walk – walks – walking) to school with her friends.
5. Listen, birds (sing – is singing – are singing) sweetly.
6. Look, he is trying to (climb – climbing – is climbing) the tree.
7. What are you (do – does – doing) now, Heba?
8. They (is listening– listen – are listening) to their teacher at the moment.
9. Listen, I think the baby (cries – is crying – crying).
10. Where's he (goes – go – going)?

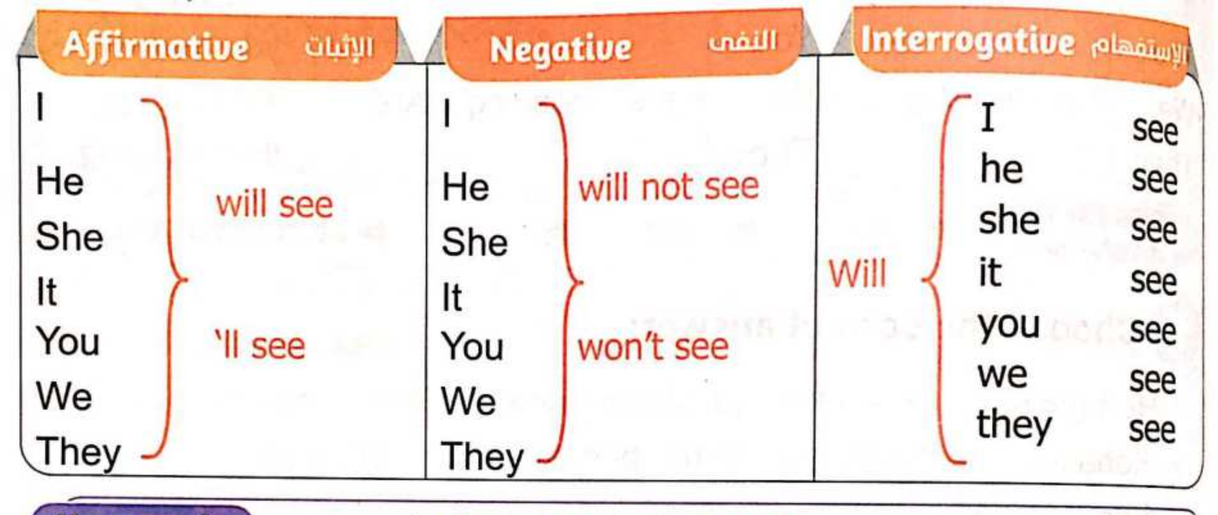
6 Put the verbs in present continuous tense:

1. A bird .... (fly) in the sky.
2. She .... (have) her breakfast.
3. What .... he .... (do) now?
4. The lion .... (run) quickly.
5. Look, Nahla .... (draw) a picture.

6. Listen, Mr Amir .... (shout).
7. Where .... they .... (go) at the moment?
8. .... she .... (sleep) now?
9. What .... you .... (clean), Soha?
10. .... Amgad .... (wash) his cat?



Future Simple Tense زمن المستقبل البسيط



Affirmative الإثبات		Negative النفى		Interrogative الإستفهام		
I He She It You We They	will see 'll see	I He She It You We They	will not see won't see	Will	I he she it you we they	see see see see see see see

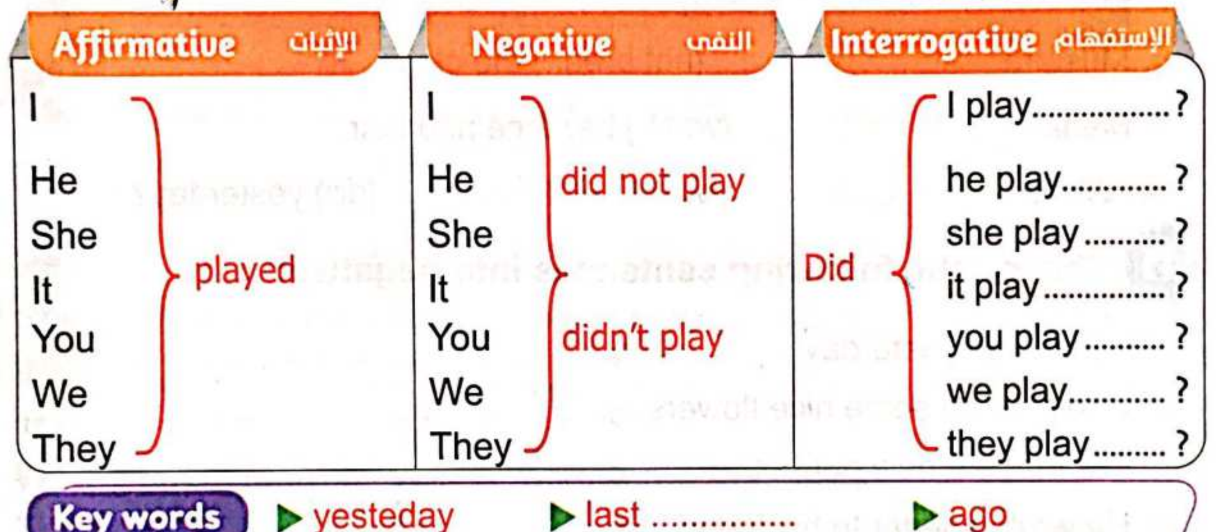
Key words ▶  tomorrow ▶  next ....

7 Choose the correct answer:

1. They (stay – will stay – stayed) in Alexandria for the next 3 days.
2. She (will tidy – tidies – tidied) her room tomorrow.
3. He'll (fly – flew – flies) to Paris next week.
4. Mr. Fahmy (comes – will come – came) to the party next Friday.
5. Will Ali (phones – phone – phoning) his friend Magdy?
6. They (will watch – watched – watch) the match tomorrow.
7. Next summer, we (go – went – will go) to Alexandria.
8. She'll (have – has – having) her lunch with her sister.
9. He (well – will – won't) come tomorrow. He is busy.
10. What will you (does – did – do) tomorrow?

8 Change the following sentences into questions:

1. He will go to the dentist tomorrow. ▶ When will he go to the dentist?
2. Yes, she will phone her friend. ▶ Will she phone her friend?
3. They will visit us next Friday. ▶ When ....?
4. Hala will help her mum. ▶ What ....?
5. Yes, he'll do his homework. ▶ ....?
6. No, she won't go out. ▶ ....?
7. Amr will drink his milk. ▶ What ....?
8. Radwa will go to the park. ▶ Where ....?
9. No, they won't eat much sugar. ▶ ....?
10. I'll join the club. ▶ What ....?



Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

Affirmative الإثبات		Negative النفي		Interrogative الإستفهام	
I / He / She / It / You / We / They	played	I / He / She / It / You / We / They	did not play / didn't play	Did	I play................?
					he play............?
					she play..........?
					it play..............?
					you play..........?
					we play............?
					they play.........?

Key words ▶ yesteday ▶ last .... ▶ ago

9 Choose the correct answer:

1. I didn't (sleep – sleeps – slept) well last night.
2. She (paints – paint – painted) a nice picture in the last art lesson.
3. I (read – reads – reading) a nice story before sleeping.
4. Where did he (go – goes – went) last weekend?
5. We (stay – stayed – are staying) home when our mother was out.
6. I (cut – cuts – cutting) my finger yesterday.

7. Did you (had – have – has) your breakfast at home?
8. She (have – had – having) a shower before going to bed.
9. They didn't (play – playing – played) football after school.
10. Who did Ayman (visits – visit – visited) a week ago?

10 Put the verbs in brackets in the past simple:

1. They .... (like) the trip very much.
2. When .... he .... (arrive) yesterday?
3. Noura .... (wear) a new dress last night.
4. They .... (not come) to the party.
5. .... she .... (sweep) the floor?
6. Samy .... (ride) his bike yesterday.
7. We .... (have) a math test last week.
8. Mustafa .... (not break) the glass.
9. Manar .... (wash) her face and hair.
10. What .... you .... (do) yesterday?

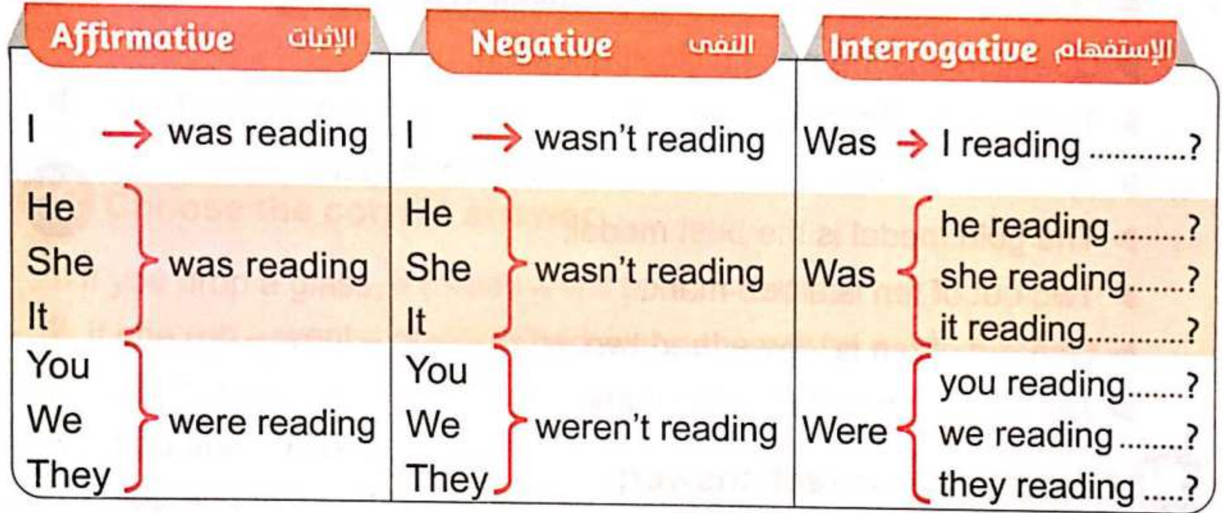
11 Change the following sentences into negative:

1. He felt sad yesterday. ▶ ....
2. She planted some nice flowers. ▶ ....
3. Ola made a new puppet. ▶ ....
4. He wrote a letter to his friend. ▶ ....
5. My father sold his old car ▶ ....
6. Ramy dropped the plate. ▶ ....
7. She showed us her new dress. ▶ ....
8. He wore his uniform. ▶ ....
9. Moheb began his new job yesterday. ▶ ....
10. Hatem put on his coat and scarf. ▶ ....

12 Change the following sentences into questions:

1. He worked on the project last night. ▶ ....
2. Salma chose the right answer. ▶ ....
3. The baby drank its milk. ▶ ....
4. Hosam brushed his teeth. ▶ ....
5. She used her new pen. ▶ ....
6. They moved to a new flat. ▶ ....
7. He changed his clothes before sleeping. ▶ ....
8. I met Samir in the morning. ▶ ....
9. We remembered your advice. ▶ ....
10. They joined El Ahly club. ▶ ....

Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضي المستمر



Affirmative الإثبات		Negative النفي		Interrogative الإستفهام	
I	→ was reading	I	→ wasn't reading	Was →	I reading ....?
He / She / It	was reading	He / She / It	wasn't reading	Was	he reading.........? / she reading.......? / it reading............?
You / We / They	were reading	You / We / They	weren't reading	Were	you reading.......? / we reading ....? / they reading .....?

When + Past simple ⟶ Past continuous

حدث كان مستمرا في الماضي عندما قطعه حدث آخر

13 Choose the correct answer:

1. At eight yesterday morning, I (am – was – were) having breakfast.
2. Ali (was – were – is) studying English last evening.
3. What were you (do – doing – did) last Thursday?

4. My sisters were (cooked – cooks – cooking) a delicious cake.
5. They (are watching – were watching – watching) TV yesterday evenin
6. He (was riding – riding – rides) a bike and eating an ice cream.
7. What were you doing when I (phone – phoned – phoning) at ten o'clock
8. Laila was reading a story when her cousin (came – coming – is comin to visit her.
9. I was having dinner when my sister (drop – drops – dropped) a plate.
10. She was doing her homework (when – while – what) her friend phoned

Comparison

- The tortoise is a slow animal.
- The tortoise is slower than the rabbit.
- The tortoise is the slowest animal.
- Question 2 is difficult.
- Question 2 is more difficult than question 3.
- Question 2 is the most difficult question.
- The bronze medal is good.
- The silver medal is better than the bronze medal.
- The gold medal is the best medal.
- Two out of ten is a bad mark.
- One out of ten is worse than two.
- Zero out of ten is the worst mark.

14 Choose the correct answer:

1. I'm (short – shorter – tall) than my father.
2. My sister is (young – younger – old) than me.
3. The (longer – longest – the longest) river in the world is the Nile River.
4. This match is (more – the most – least) exciting match I've ever watched.
5. I think the green toy is good, but the red dress is (good – worse – better).
6. This street is (longer – taller – smaller) than 50 meters.
7. Motorbikes are (the most expensive – more expensive – expensive more) than bikes.

8. The tortoise is (slow – slower – slowest) than the rabbit.
9. Camping is (exciting – more exciting – the most exciting) holiday.
10. The lion is (strong – stronger – strange) than the fox.
11. The (larger – largest – the largest) desert in Africa is the Sahara Desert.
12. I think running is the (more – the most – least) interesting sport.
13. Mount Everest is (highest – the highest – higher than) mountain in the world.
14. Football is (good – better – the best) sport of all sports in my country.
15. Soha is (thin – fat – thinner) than her sister.
16. Green land is (beautiful – more beautiful – the most beautiful) than the yellow land.
17. My school is (bigger – fatter – lighter) than my flat.
18. My drawings are always (bad – worse – worst) than my sister's drawings.

The First Conditional (IF)

If + present simple (مضارع بسيط) ▶▶▶ will ('ll – won't) + inf (المصدر)

15 Choose the correct answer:

1. If you drop a glass, it (break – will break – broke).
2. If she (go – went – goes) to bed early, she will be early to school.
3. He will (sees – see – saw) with the other eye if he closes one eye.
4. If you aren't careful, you (will – won't – would) hurt yourself.
5. If you add two and three, you will (get – gets – got) five.
6. If she puts a plastic toy in water, it (will – won't – would) sink.
7. She will be late for school if she (doesn't – isn't – hasn't) hurry.
8. We will (miss – missed – misses) you if you go away.
9. If he (trains – doesn't train – don't train) every day, he will be a good player.
10. If you don't do your homework, your teacher (will– won't – wouldn't) be angry.

Possessive Adjectives
صفات الملكية

Possessive Pronouns
ضمائر الملكية

- This is my book. — This book is mine.
- This is his book. — This book is his.
- This is her book. — This book is hers.
- This is my cat. Its eyes are blue.
- This is your book. — This book is yours.
- This is our book. — This book is ours.
- These are their books. — These books are theirs.

16 Choose the correct answer:

1. (Your – His – Her) hair is long, Samira.
2. This is Ali's ball. It's (hers – his – mine).
3. Hala and Hend help (our – their – her) mother.
4. Mona has a red dress. The red dress is (his – hers – ours).
5. This is her new dress. (His – Her – Its) color is bright.
6. We have a new blue car. The new blue car is (mine – theirs – ours).
7. They do (their – our – his) homework in the evening.
8. This is my pen. It's (his – hers – mine).
9. She combs (his – her – its) hair in the morning.
10. Yasser has a nice bike. It's (mine – his – hers).
11. We leave (our – their – her) school in the afternoon.
12. They have a nice house with a garden. The house is (ours – theirs – yours).
13. I have (his – her – my) breakfast at home.
14. This isn't my pencil. It's (yours – mine – your).
15. This isn't my bag. (Yours – Mine – His) is brown.
16. Mohamed cleans (his – her – its) shoes in the morning.
17. (Her – Your – His) father is a gentleman, Heba.
18. Dina likes (your – his – her) small pets.



Theme (1)
I discover myself

Unit 1

Life in my world
الحياة في عالمي

In this unit I will ....
- understand a story about a visit to a marine ecosystem.
- understand and use relative clauses.
- read and understand a story about a mangrove ecosystem.
- listen to and understand an interview with a wildlife photographer.
- understand and use abstract nouns.
- use linking words to write about how to stay healthy.
- read and understand a story about a grassland ecosystem.
- revise and use will, can, might, must, can't for predictions, offers, possibilities, and obligation.



Objectives

Vocabulary	Ecosystems: area, community, desert, ecosystem, forest, freshwater grassland, interact, living, marine non-living, protect, rainforest, survive wadi. Plants:canopy, custard apple, medicinal plant, pollen, seed, thick leaves, soil. Animals: butterfly, dugong, hummingbird, kingfisher lizard, worm. Health and heart: arteries, beat, blood, carbon dioxide, circulatory system, cough, exercise, illness, oxygen, veins.
Language	We learned about the area where they live. They live close to a mountain which is called Mount Sinai. I have a cousin who lives near a wadi. Abstract nouns: I wanted to show people the beauty of the Amazon rainforest. I hope your exhibition is a success. We will be hungry. Can we catch a rabbit to eat? Some rabbits might be dead. We must wait for rain.
Reading	A report about a visit to a mangrove forest; a story about a mangrove tree; a story about hungry lions
Writing	How to have healthy hearts; using linking words to say how to stay healthy; a story about an ecosystem
Speaking	Comparing plants and humans: saying how to keep your heart healthy
Listening	A description of a visit to Sinai; an interview with a wildlife photographer
Life skills	**Problem solving, accountability**: the importance of helping the environment **Self-management**: looking after your heart
Values	**Appreciation of science - Respect for the environment**
Issues and challenges	**- Citizenship** **- Environmental responsibility**
Integrated cross-curriculum topics	**Science:** heart health



Lesson 1 A great trip

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس


ecosystem نظام بيئي


grassland أرض عشبية


forest غابة


rainforest غابة كثيفة الأشجار


marine بحري (مرتبط بالبحار و المحيطات)


salt water ماء مالح


fresh water ماء عذب


desert صحراء


community مجتمع


living things كائنات حية


non-living things كائنات غير حية


species أنواع


diseases أمراض (بأنواعها)

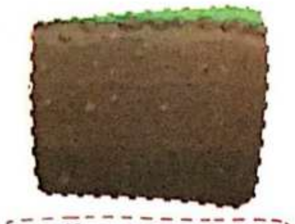


illnesses أمراض (حالات اضطراب الجسم)



area منطقة


thick سميك









soil	survive	protect	interact
تربة	يبقى على قيد الحياة	يحمي	يتفاعل

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

trip	رحلة قصيرة	global warming	الاحتباس الحراري
South Sinai	جنوب سيناء	air	هواء
Nabq National Park	محمية نبق الطبيعية	carbon dioxide	ثاني أكسيد الكربون
pond	بحيرة	kinds	أنواع
coast	ساحل	storm	عاصفة

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

mangrove trees	أشجار المانجروف	insects	حشرات
roots	جذور	bees	نحل
leaves	أوراق الشجر	butterflies	فراشات
among	بين	such as	مثل

Adjectives:

important	هام - مهم	large	ضخم
amazing	مذهل	big	كبير
special	خاص - مميز	little	صغير
safe	آمن	warm	دافئ
deep	عميق	hot	حار
shallow	ضحل	high	عالٍ - مرتفع
different	مختلف	great	عظيم - رائع

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	PP
interact	يتفاعل	interacted	interacted
protect	يحمي	protected	protected
wash away	يجرف	washed away	washed away
help	يساعد	helped	helped
touch	يلمس	touched	touched
visit	يزور	visited	visited
learn	يتعلم	learned (learnt)	learned (learnt)
stop	يتوقف	stopped	stopped
like	يحب	liked	liked
live	يعيش	lived	lived
arrive	يصل	arrived	arrived
survive	يبقى على قيد الحياة	survived	survived

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	PP
get	يحصل على	got	got
lose	يخسر - يفقد	lost	lost
have	عنده - لديه	had	had
catch	يمسك	caught	caught
make	يصنع - يجعل	made	made
say	يقول	said	said
fight	يقاوم	fought	fought
feel	له ملمس - يشعر	felt	felt
go	يذهب	went	gone
see	يرى	saw	seen
grow	ينمو	grew	grown
swim	يسبح	swam	swum
take	يأخذ	took	taken

The Lesson Notes

Nabq National Park محمية نبق الطبيعية

Nabq National Park, which was declared a natural reserve in 1992, has an area of 600 km2 (of which 440 km2 are in land and 130 km2 are in the water zone), located on the Gulf of Aqaba in the area between Sharm el-Sheikh and Dahab and the Wadi Umm Adwai in South Sinai. The reserve is located 35 kilometers north of Sharm el-Sheikh.

محمية نبق أعلنت محمية طبيعية في عام 1992، مساحتها 600كم2 (منها 440 كم2 في اليابس بالإضافة إلى 130 كم2 في النطاق المائي)، وتقع هذه المحمية على خليج العقبة في المنطقة ما بين شرم الشيخ ودهب ووادي أم عدوي في جنوب سيناء. وتبعد المحمية 53 كيلو متراً شمال شرم الشيخ.

Mangrove trees أشجار المانجروف

Mangroves are trees that grow south of the Red Sea coast because of their ability to cope with the high salinity and drought conditions of the region, an important part of the coastal flora. Mangroves are designed to protect Red Sea shores from erosion by rising sea levels caused by global warming and climatic effects. Expanded cultivation of mangroves helps reduce the risk of climate change as they absorb large amounts of carbon dioxide.

المانجروف هي أشجار تنمو جنوب سواحل البحر الأحمر، بسبب مقدرتها الفائقة على موائمة ظروف الجفاف والملوحة العالية السائدة بالمنطقة حيث تشكل هذه البيئة جزء مهم من منظومة الحياة النباتية الساحلية. أشجار المانجروف الهدف من إنشائها حماية شواطىء البحرالاحمر من التآكل نتيجة ارتفاع منسوب مياه البحر بسبب ارتفاع درجة حرارة الارض والتأثيرات المناخية. التوسع في زراعة أشجار المانجروف يساهم في الحد من مخاطر التغيرات المناخية حيث أنها تمتص قدر كبير من غاز ثاني أكسيد الكربون.

among - between

- among — بين "أكثر من اثنين"
- between — بين "اثنين فقط"

▶ The flower was between the big tree and the small tree.

▶ Look! Some children are playing among the trees.

Trees' leaves أوراق الأشجار

- ('s) الملكية تضاف للاسم المالك المفرد أما إذا كان الاسم المالك جمع ومنتهي بـ (s) نضيف (') فقط بعد (s) الجمع.

▶ This is the boy's bag. — هذه حقيبة الولد.

▶ This is the boys' school. — هذه مدرسة البنين.



Read and learn

Did you know? هل تعلم؟

The dorcas gazelle never needs to drink! It gets all the water it needs from plants.

غزال الدوركاس لا يحتاج للماء أبدًا! فهو يحصل على كل الماء الذي يحتاجه من النباتات.



What's an ecosystem? ما هو النظام (التوازن) البيئي؟

- An ecosystem is all the animals and plants in an area.
- النظام البيئي هو كل الحيوانات والنباتات التي تعيش في منطقة معينة.
- The ecosystem can be as small as a pond or as big as a forest.
- النظام البيئي يمكن أن يكون صغير، كبحيرة مثلاً ويمكن أن يكون كبير كالغابة.
- In an ecosystem, living things such as plants and animals interact with non-living things such as water, rocks, and soil.
- في النظام البيئي، تتفاعل الكائنات الحية كالنباتات و الحيوانات مع الكائنات غيرالحية مثل الماء والصخور والتربة.
- The different species in an ecosystem make a community, and they all need each other to survive.
- الأنواع المختلفة في النظام البيئي تُكون المجتمع، وكلهم يحتاجون لبعضهم البعض من أجل البقاء.

Our School Trip to Nabq National Park

by Heba Osman

Nabq is a very big National Park ❶ in South Sinai. Along the coast here, there are 4.8 kilometers of mangrove forest ❷, which is the largest in the Red Sea. We went there to learn why mangrove forests are so important for the marine ecosystem ❸.

When we arrived at the beach, we saw trees growing out of the sea! Most trees can't grow in salt water, but mangrove trees can.

❶ محمية طبيعية
❷ أشجار المانجروف
❸ النظام البيئي البحري



Our School Trip to Nabq National Park

by Heba Osman

They have amazing roots ❹ which grow high out of the water. These roots help them get oxygen. When I touched the trees' leaves ❺, they felt very thick ❻. These special leaves stop the plants losing water when it's very hot.

We learned that mangrove trees help the environment ❼ in many ways. Mangrove trees protect the non-living things ❽ and the living things ❾ in the marine ecosystem. When there are storms, their deep roots stop the sand washing away. The forests are also a safe home ❿ for many animals. Hundreds of different kinds of fish, birds, insects, and other animals live in the mangrove forests. We could see many little fish swimming in the shallow water ⓫ among the roots of the trees, where bigger fish and other animals couldn't catch them. That is how mangrove trees help young fish survive.



The leaves of the mangrove trees take four times more carbon dioxide from the air than other kinds of trees. Mangrove trees help us with global warming ⓬. We also saw small yellow flowers on the mangrove trees. There were a lot of bees and other insects on them. Bees make a special honey from the mangrove flowers.

People say mangrove honey helps fight some illnesses and diseases.

What I liked most about the mangroves was seeing all the different species ⓭ making a community ⓮. The plants, animals, and all interact ⓯ with each other to survive. I've never seen so many different species of butterflies! It was a great day.

❹ جذور مذهلة
❺ اوراق الاشجار
❻ سميك
❼ البيئة
❽ يحمي الكائنات غير الحية
❾ الكائنات الحية
❿ موطن آمن
⓫ ماء ضحل
⓬ الاحتباس الحراري
⓭ انواع مختلفة
⓮ مجتمع
⓯ يتواصل - يتفاعل



Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

ecosystem – Sinai – National – forest – coast

Nabq is a very big .... Park in South Sinai. Along the .... here, there are 4.8 kilometers of mangrove ...., which is the largest in the Red Sea. We went there to learn why mangrove forests are so important for the marine ....

2 Read the text again and circle the correct answers:

1. Mangrove trees are special because they can grow in (freshwater - salt water).
2. Mangrove forests (protect - kill) the marine ecosystem.
3. The leaves of mangrove trees take more (oxygen - carbon dioxide) from the air than other trees.
4. Bees make a special honey from the (roots - flowers) of mangrove trees.
5. The plants, animals, and insects (interact - protect) with each other to survive.

3 Read the text again and complete with the correct word:

butterflies - illnesses - living things - non-living - survive - thick

1. The leaves of mangrove tree are ....
2. Camels can .... in the hot desert.
3. Fish and animals are ....
4. Stones and sand are .... things.
5. Mangrove honey can help fight some ....
6. Many ...., bees, and other insects live in mangrove forests.

4 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. the – help – Mangrove – environment – trees.
   ▶ ....
2. little fish – mangrove – live under – Why do – trees?
   ▶ .... ?
3. the – Mangrove – non-living – trees – things – protect.
   ▶ ....
4. animals – Different – in – trees – the mangrove – live.
   ▶ ....
5. help us – global – trees – Mangrove – with – warming.
   ▶ ....
6. importance of – mangrove – is – trees – What – the ?
   ▶ .... ?
7. can – How – global warming – help – with – mangrove trees?
   ▶ .... ?
8. can't – Most trees – salt – in – grow – water.
   ▶ ....
9. survive – young – fish – Mangrove – help – trees.
   ▶ ....
10. honey – diseases – fight – some – helps – Mangrove.
   ▶ ....

5 Read and circle T (True) or F (False):

1. An ecosystem is only the plants in an area. T / F
2. All ecosystems are very big. T / F
3. An ecosystem doesn't include water or rocks. T / F
4. Living things and non-living things interact with each other in an ecosystem. T / F
5. The different parts of an ecosystem are a community. T / F

6 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. why did heba's class visit the mangrove trees

▶ ....

2. nabq is a very big national park in south sinai

▶ ....

3. the mangrove forest is along the red sea coast

▶ ....

4. which ecosystems do you find in egypt

▶ ....

7 Read the following text and then answer the questions:

Most trees can't grow in salt water, but mangrove trees can. They have amazing roots which grow high out of the water. These roots help them get oxygen. The trees' leaves are very thick. These special leaves stop the plants losing water when it's very hot.

Mangrove trees help the environment in many ways. Mangrove trees protect the non-living things and the living things in the marine ecosystem. When there are storms, their deep roots stop the sand washing away. The forests are also a safe home for many animals.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Most trees can't grow in (fresh – salt – clean) water.
2. The roots of mangrove trees help them get (oxygen – carbon dioxide – smoke).

B Answer these questions:

3. Where do the roots of mangrove trees grow?

▶ ....

4. How do mangrove trees help the environment?

▶ ....

Lesson 2 Language



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



scientist عالِم



cough يكح



medicinal plant نبات طبي



lizard سحلية



holiday إجازة



close to بالقرب من



store محل



dry جاف



wadi وادي

normally عادةً



Sinai Peninsula شبه جزيرة سيناء

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	PP
cough	يكح	coughed	coughed
talk about	يتحدث عن	talked about	talked about
remember	يذكر	remembered	remembered

Present		Past	PP
listen	يستمع	listened	listened
call	يسمى	called	called
work	يعمل	worked	worked
want	يريد	wanted	wanted
complete	يكمل	completed	completed
use	يستخدم	used	used

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	PP
meet	يقابل	met	met
buy	يشتري	bought	bought
do	يفعل	did	done
know	يعرف	knew	known

Read and learn

Did you know? هل تعلم؟

Sharm el-Sheikh is now a "green city" because its hotels use solar energy and all its buses are electric.

شرم الشيخ هي الآن مدينة خضراء لأن فنادقها تستخدم الطاقة الشمسية وكل أتوبيساتها كهربية.

Grammar Study

who – which – where

who الذي - التي - الذين - اللائي ▶▶▶ used for people
تحل محل فاعل أو مفعول عاقل.

- I have a friend who has very special skills.
- These are the boys who won the match.

which الذي - التي - الذين - اللائي ▶▶▶ used for things
تحل محل فاعل أو مفعول غير عاقل.

▶ This is the tree which my grandpa grew.
▶ Did you see the car which my father bought?

where حيث ▶▶▶ used for places
تستخدم لوصف أو تعريف مكان.

▶ Luxor is a city where we can visit lots of interesting places.
▶ That is the village where my grandma lived when she was young.

Exercises on Lesson 

1 Match to make correct sentences:

'A'	'B'
1. I have a friend who	a) are from her garden.
2. Cairo is the city where	b) is good for tired people.
3. Lara always gives us figs which	c) are very good at science.
4. These are the girls who	d) my cousins live.
5. This is the store where you	e) lives in Alexandria.
6. This is a medicinal plant which	f) can buy some sweet oranges.

2 Complete the sentences with words from the box:

which – where – who

1. We use .... for people.
2. We use .... for things.
3. We use .... for places.

3 Choose the correct word(s) in brackets:

1. Do you remember my cousin Seleem (who – where – which) lives in the Sinai Peninsula?
2. This is a lizard (which – where – who) lives in the Egyptian desert.

3. We learned a lot about the area (which – where – who) they live.

4. This is a medicinal plant (where – who – which) helps people with coughs.

5. They live close to a mountain (who – which – where) is called Mount Sinai.

6. This is a wadi (who – where – when) different animals live.

7. I have another cousin (which – where – who) lives near a wadi.

8. This is a person (which – who – where) has a cough.

9. A wadi is an ecosystem (where – which – who) is normally dry.

10. This is Dina (where – who – which) lives in Cairo.

11. We met a man (who – which – where) works in a garden.

12. This is a place (where – which – who) it sometimes snows.

4 Complete with "who – which – where":

1. Do you know my aunt .... lives in New York?

2. I know a nice place .... we can go for a holiday.

3. Younis is a boy .... wants to be a scientist.

4. Malak has a book .... is about medicinal plants in the Sinai Peninsula.

5. Do you know the house .... my grandparents live?

6. I have a friend .... is very good at tennis.

7. I have an aunt .... lives on the coast.

8. This is a plant .... some people use for medicine.

9. This is the place .... you can see lots of lizards.

10. Dina has a friend .... lives in Siwa.

11. December is a month .... is often cold.

12. Aswan is in the south of Egypt .... you can see the High Dam.



Lesson 3 A Rainforest Ecosystem

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



photographer
مصور



seeds
بذور



canopy
الطبقة العليامن الغابة (أعالي الأشجار)



wildlife
حياة برية



flowers
أزهار



hummingbird
طائر الطنان



exhibition
معرض



custard
كسترد

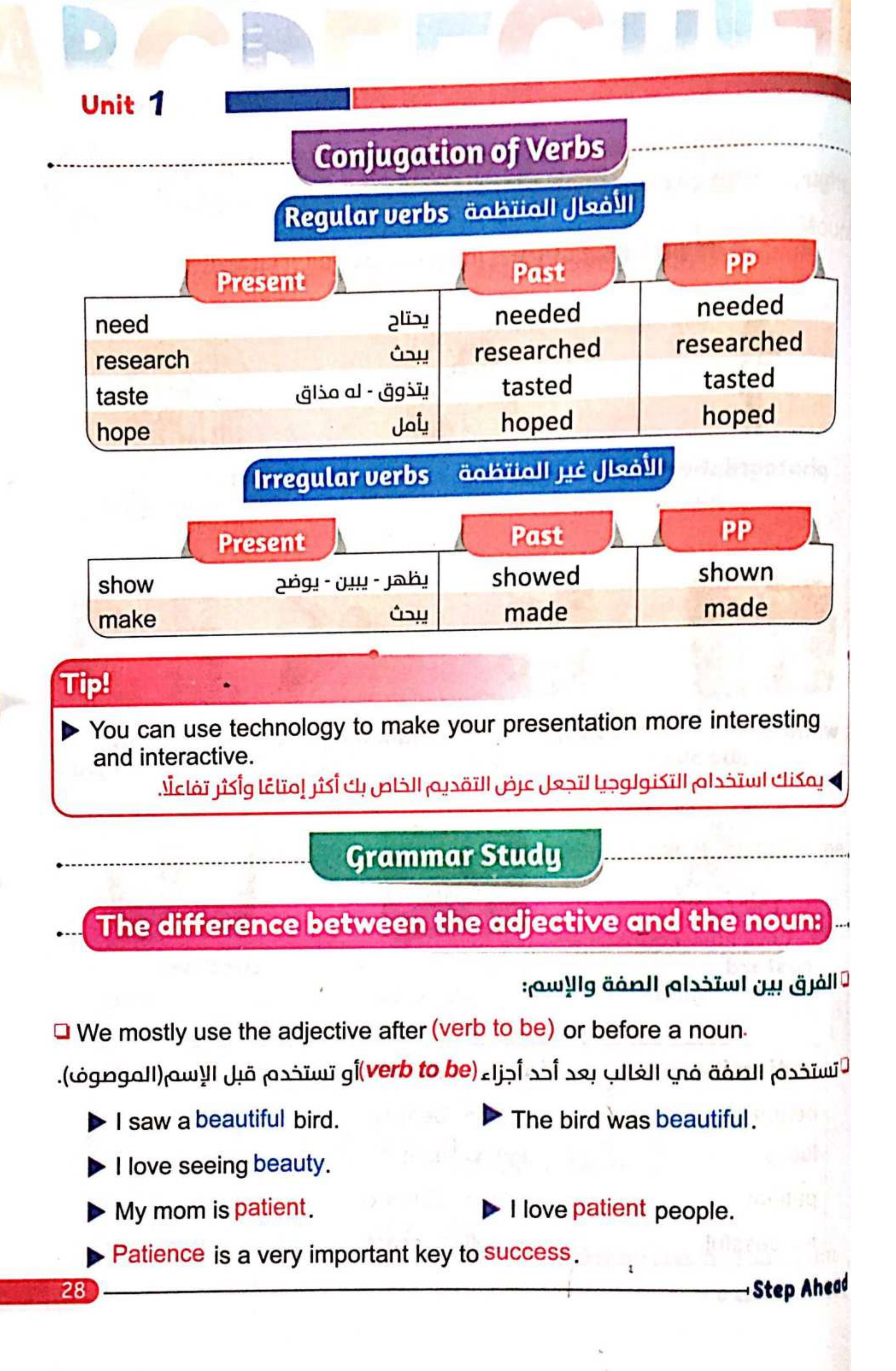


goal
هدف - غاية



cut down
يقطع

Adjectives:	صفة	Abstract noun:	اسم مجرد
beautiful	جميل	beauty	جمال
lucky	محظوظ	luck	حظ
patient	صبور	patience	صبر
successful	ناجح	success	نجاح



Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	PP
need	يحتاج	needed	needed
research	يبحث	researched	researched
taste	يتذوق - له مذاق	tasted	tasted
hope	يأمل	hoped	hoped

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	PP
show	يظهر - يبين - يوضح	showed	shown
make	يبحث	made	made

Tip!

▶ You can use technology to make your presentation more interesting and interactive.

◀ يمكنك استخدام التكنولوجيا لتجعل عرض التقديم الخاص بك أكثر إمتاعًا وأكثر تفاعلًا.

Grammar Study

The difference between the adjective and the noun:

❑ الفرق بين استخدام الصفة والإسم:

❑ We mostly use the adjective after (verb to be) or before a noun.

❑ تستخدم الصفة في الغالب بعد أحد أجزاء (*verb to be*) أو تستخدم قبل الإسم(الموصوف).

- ▶ I saw a beautiful bird.
- ▶ The bird was beautiful.
- ▶ I love seeing beauty.
- ▶ My mom is patient.
- ▶ I love patient people.
- ▶ Patience is a very important key to success.

Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Complete the sentences with words from the box:

ecosystem - interact - living things - seeds - survive - trees

1. Malak wanted to learn more about the Amazon rainforest because a lot of people are cutting down the ....
2. The Amazon rainforest is a very important ....
3. All the .... in the rainforest need each other.
4. Custard apple trees help many animals ....
5. The animals take the tree's .... to other parts of the forest.
6. Malak wanted to show people how all the parts of the forest ecosystem ....

2 Choose the correct word(s) in brackets:

1. She likes the (beautiful – beauty) of flowers.
2. The children are (luck – lucky) to have a new school.
3. The teacher has a lot of (patience – patient) with her students.
4. The Amazon rainforest is a (beauty – beautiful) ecosystem.
5. The project was a great (success – successful).
6. Fares doesn't want to wait because he isn't a (patient – patience) person.
7. There is so much (beauty – beautiful) in the Amazon rainforest.
8. They weren't (luck – lucky) that day. They didn't see any wild animals.
9. My grandpa doesn't have (patience – patient) to learn about computers.
10. Her (successful – success) made us all very happy.

3 Write N (Noun) or A (Adjective):

a) luck ☐	b) successful ☐	c) goal ☐
d) patience ☐	e) beautiful ☐	f) lucky ☐
g) beauty ☐	h) patient ☐	i) success ☐

4 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. ecosystem – important – The Amazon – a very – is – rainforest.
 ▶ ....
2. the – of – forest – ecosystem – interact – The parts.
 ▶ ....
3. Amazon – is – Where – the – forest?
 ▶ .... ?
4. do – each – How – animals – help – other?
 ▶ .... ?

5 Write a paragraph of (55) words on an ecosystem you choose:

▸ Ideas to help you:

- *What's the ecosystem?*
- *What living things that live there?*
- *What non- living things that live there?*
- *How do they interact and help each other?*



....

....

....



....

....

....



....

....

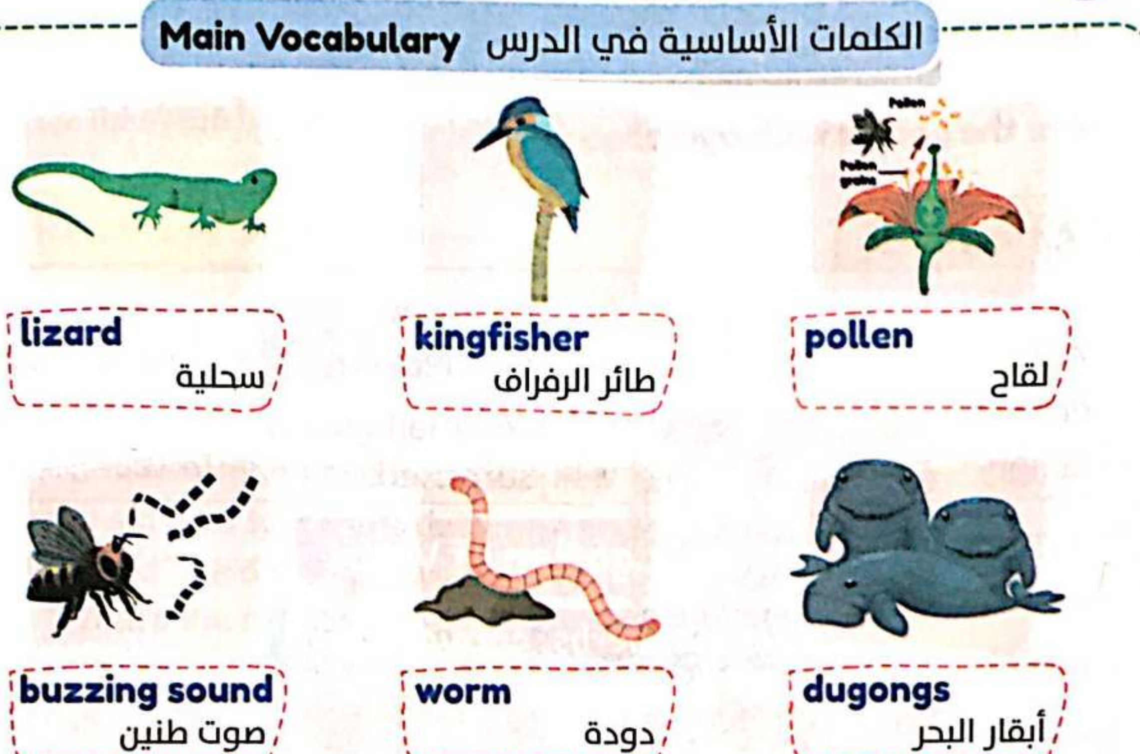
....

....

Lesson 4 Story: In the mangrove tree



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



English	Arabic
lizard	سحلية
kingfisher	طائر الرفراف
pollen	لقاح
buzzing sound	صوت طنين
worm	دودة
dugongs	أبقار البحر

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
bad news	أخبار سيئة	reason for	سبب لـ -مُبرر لـ
carefully	بعناية	soon	قريبًا
truck	شاحنة	problem	مشكلة

Sentences and Expressions جمل وتعبيرات

English	Arabic
What is the matter?	ما الأمر؟
get better	يتحسن
will be worse	سيكون أسوأ
In the future	فى المستقبل

make a mistake	يرتكب خطأ
out of the sea	خارج البحر
Are the people back again?	هل عاد الناس مرة أخرى؟

Adjectives:

old	قديم	confused	مرتبك - متحير
new	جديد	worried	قلق
difficult	صعب	sad	حزين
hungry	جائع	surprised	مندهش - متفاجئ

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

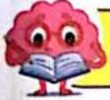
Present		Past	PP
look	يشبه - ينظر	looked	looked
shout	يصرخ	shouted	shouted
plant	يزرع	planted	planted
ask	يسأل	asked	asked
carry	يحمل	carried	carried
explain	يشرح	explained	explained
smile	يبتسم	smiled	smiled
reply	يرد	replied	replied
cry	يصرخ	cried	cried

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	PP
hear	يسمع	heard	heard
bring	يُحضر	brought	brought
fly	يطير	flew	flown
come	يأتي	came	come

Definitions

worried	: You feel unhappy because you are thinking about problems of things that could happen.
surprised	: Something happens and you didn't think it would happen.
confused	: You find it difficult to understand something.



Read and learn



In the mangrove tree



A kingfisher ❶ was visiting her old friend, the lizard ❷, in a mangrove tree. She flew down and sat next to the lizard.

"You look sad," said the kingfisher to the lizard. "What's the matter?"

"People came and cut down ❸ some trees. The trees protected the worms ❹ and the fish we eat, but now it's difficult to find food."



"Oh no!" said the kingfisher, looking worried. "I'm hungry."

Suddenly, a dugong came up out of the sea.

"Hello Dugong!" said the lizard, surprised ❺.

"Hello Lizard. Hello Kingfisher. I have some bad news ❻," said the dugong.

"What is it? Are the people back again?" asked the kingfisher.

"Yes, they are. Can't you hear them?" replied the dugong.



The lizard and the kingfisher listened carefully ❼. They heard trucks and people shouting.

"Oh no. How many more mangrove trees are they going to cut down?" cried the lizard.

❶ طائر الرفراف
❷ سحلية
❸ يبتر - يقطع
❹ دود
❺ مُندهشة
❻ أخبار سيئة
❼ باهتمام

At that moment, the animals heard a buzzing sound ❽. There were three bees buzzing around the tree.



One of the bees flew close to ❾ the other animals and said, "The people are not going to cut down more trees. They are going to plant other mangrove trees. They understand that they made a mistake ❿. They have learned that the mangrove trees are important, so they're planting new ones. They brought us here to help the trees grow."

"How will you help the trees grow?" asked the dugong, confused ⓫.

"We carry pollen ⓬ from one plant or tree to another and that helps them to make seeds," explained the bee.

"So, is life going to get better here?" asked the kingfisher. "Yes, it is," replied the bee, smiling.

"Good!" said the lizard and the kingfisher together. "We're hungry!"

❽ صوت طنين
❾ بالقرب من
❿ ارتكبوا خطأ
⓫ متحير
⓬ لقاح

Exercises on Lesson 4



1 Match each word with its correct definition:

'A'	'B'
1. confused	a) Something happens and you didn't think it would happen.
2. surprised	b) You feel unhappy because you are thinking about problems of things that could happen.
3. worried	c) You find it difficult to understand something.

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

seeds - tree - mistake - pollen - mangrove

Omnia : Did you like the story of "In the mangrove tree"?

Shaza : Yes, of course.

Omnia : Why did you like it?

Shaza : Because at the end, the people are not going to cut down more trees. They are going to plant other .... trees. They understand that they made a .... They have learned that the mangrove trees are important.

Omnia : How can they get the ....?

Shaza : Bees can help them.

Omnia : Bees carry .... from one plant or tree to another and that helps them to make seeds.

Shaza : Wonderful. I liked the story, too.

3 Read the story again and circle the correct word:

1. The animals can't find enough (trees - food) to eat.
2. The (kingfisher - dugong) says that the people are back.
3. The animals (see - hear) the people and trucks.
4. The (dugong - bee) says that the people are not going to cut down more trees.
5. The (people - kingfisher) brought the bees to the mangrove.

4 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. protect - the - The trees - worms.
   ▶ ....
2. again - Are - people - back - the?
   ▶ .... ?
3. buzzing - animals - sound - a - heard - The.
   ▶ ....
4. the tree - Three - were - buzzing - bees - around.
   ▶ ....

5 Complete the story with the words in the box:

bees - cut down - food - mangrove - people - trees - worried - were planting

The kingfisher visited her friend, the lizard, in a ❶ .... tree. The lizard was sad. She explained that when the people came to the mangrove forest, they ❷ .... the trees. After that, it was difficult for the lizard to find food to eat. Dugong told his friends the kingfisher and the lizard that the ❸ .... were back. They could hear trucks and people shouting. The animals were ❹ .... Then they heard some ❺ .... buzzing around the tree. A bee told the animals what was happening. The people learned that the ❻ .... were important, and that they were part of the ecosystem. The people ❼ .... more trees and they brought the bees to help the trees make seeds. When the trees grow again, there will be more ❽ .... for the animals.

6 Read the story again and answer the questions:

1. Where does the lizard live?
   ▶ ....
2. What problem does the lizard talk about at the start of the story?
   ▶ ....
3. What was the reason for this problem?
   ▶ ....
4. Why was it difficult for the lizard to find food?
   ▶ ....
5. Why did the people bring bees to the mangrove trees?
   ▶ ....
6. Why do the animals think the problem will get better soon?
   ▶ ....

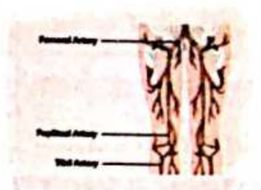


Lesson 5 I have a healthy heart

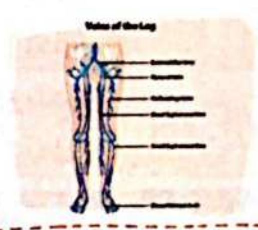
Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



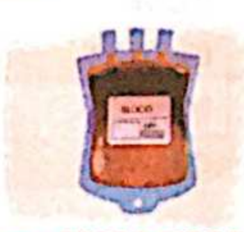

healthy heart قلب صحي



arteries شرايين



vein وريد



blood دم



carbon dioxide ثانى أكسيد الكربون



oxygen أكسجين



bones عظام



circulatory system الجهاز الدورى (الدورة الدموية)

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

nutrients	مواد مُغذية	humans	البشر - بنو آدم
minerals	معادن	adult	شخص بالغ
instead of	بدلاً من	new born baby	طفل حديث الولادة
in some ways	بطريقة أو بأخرى	the right amount	الكمية الصحيحة (المناسبة)
sunlight	ضوء الشمس	the same as	نفس الشيء
get sick	يمرض	similar to	مشابه لـ

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	PP
move	يتحرك	moved	moved
try	يحاول	tried	tried
play	يلعب	played	played
answer	يجيب	answered	answered

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	PP
read	يقرأ	read	read
keep	يحافظ	kept	kept
eat	يأكل	ate	eaten
beat	يخفق	beat	beaten
run	يجري	ran	run
get sick	يمرض	got sick	got sick
write	يكتب	wrote	written



Read and learn

Are plants similar to humans?



In some ways ❶, humans are similar to plants. Think about our circulatory system ❷. Instead of water, our veins ❸ and arteries ❹ carry blood around our bodies.

Arteries move blood away from our heart. Veins carry blood to it. The nutrients ❺ and oxygen that we need are in our blood. But we don't use carbon dioxide like plants do. Humans need sunlight ❻, too. We can't make our own food, but we get vitamin D ❼ from sunlight. This can help protect us from getting sick. Sunlight also makes a lot of people feel happy!

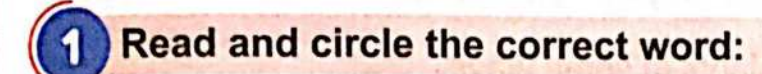
❶ بطريقة ما
❷ دورتنا الدموية
❸ أوردة
❹ شرايين
❺ عناصر مغذية
❻ ضوء الشمس
❼ فيتامين د

What can people do to keep their heart healthy?

- I try to eat food that is good for my heart, like fruit, vegetables, and fish.
- I play sports with my friends. I like being outside and exercising.
- I find time to relax! This can keep your heart healthy, too.

Exercises on Lesson 5





1 Read and circle the correct word:

Your heart (beats - moves) over 100,000 times a day! So it's important to keep your heart healthy. When you walk, run, swim, or cycle, you make your (blood - heart) work harder. If you (play video games - exercise) regularly, your heart works better and you can get the minerals, nutrients, and (oxygen - water) you need more easily.

2 Complete the sentences with the words in the box:

"How to keep your heart healthy"

bike - Exercise - fish - relax - sports - swim - vegetables

1- Eat healthy food like fruit, ..., and ....
2- Play .... with your friends. .... regularly in the gym or outside.
3- Keep moving, walk, run, ..., or ride your ....
4- Take some time to .... and be quiet.

3 Choose the correct word(s) in brackets:

1. We are (plants – humans).
2. (Bones – Veins) and arteries carry blood around our bodies.
3. The nutrients and (oxygen – carbon dioxide) that we need are in our blood.
4. (Veins – Arteries) move blood away from our heart.

5. Your (heart – stomach) pumps blood around your body.
6. Blood travels around our bodies in our (veins and arteries – muscles and bones).
7. (Veins – Arteries) carry blood to our heart.
8. Blood carries (carbon dioxide – oxygen) and nutrients around our bodies
9. We can get vitamin D from (sunlight – water).
10. Vitamin D can (make – protect) people from getting sick.

4 Read the text again and answer Yes or No:

1. Humans are the same as plants in some ways. ▶ ....
2. Veins and arteries carry water around our bodies. ▶ ....
3. Arteries carry blood away from our heart. ▶ ....
4. Blood carries the oxygen that we need. ▶ ....
5. Humans and plants need sunlight. ▶ ....
6. Humans can make their own food from sunlight. ▶ ....

5 Order the words to make a correct sentence:

1. similar – humans – plants – Are – to?
   ▶ .... ?
2. around – Veins – our bodies – and arteries – carry blood..
   ▶ ....
3. away – heart – from – Arteries – our – move blood.
   ▶ ....
4. people – Sunlight – happy – feel – a lot of – makes.
   ▶ ....
5. vitamin D – sunlight – We – from – get.
   ▶ ....
6. beat – How – does – heart – often – the?
   ▶ .... ?
7. do – does – What – heart – your?
   ▶ .... ?
8. heart – move – your – does – How – blood?
   ▶ .... ?



Lesson 6 Writing: Linking words

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس







healthy boy ولد يتمتع بصحة جيدة

exercise تمرين - يتمرن

physical activity نشاط بدني





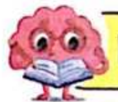




dates بلح

pomegranates رمان

lamb لحم الضأن

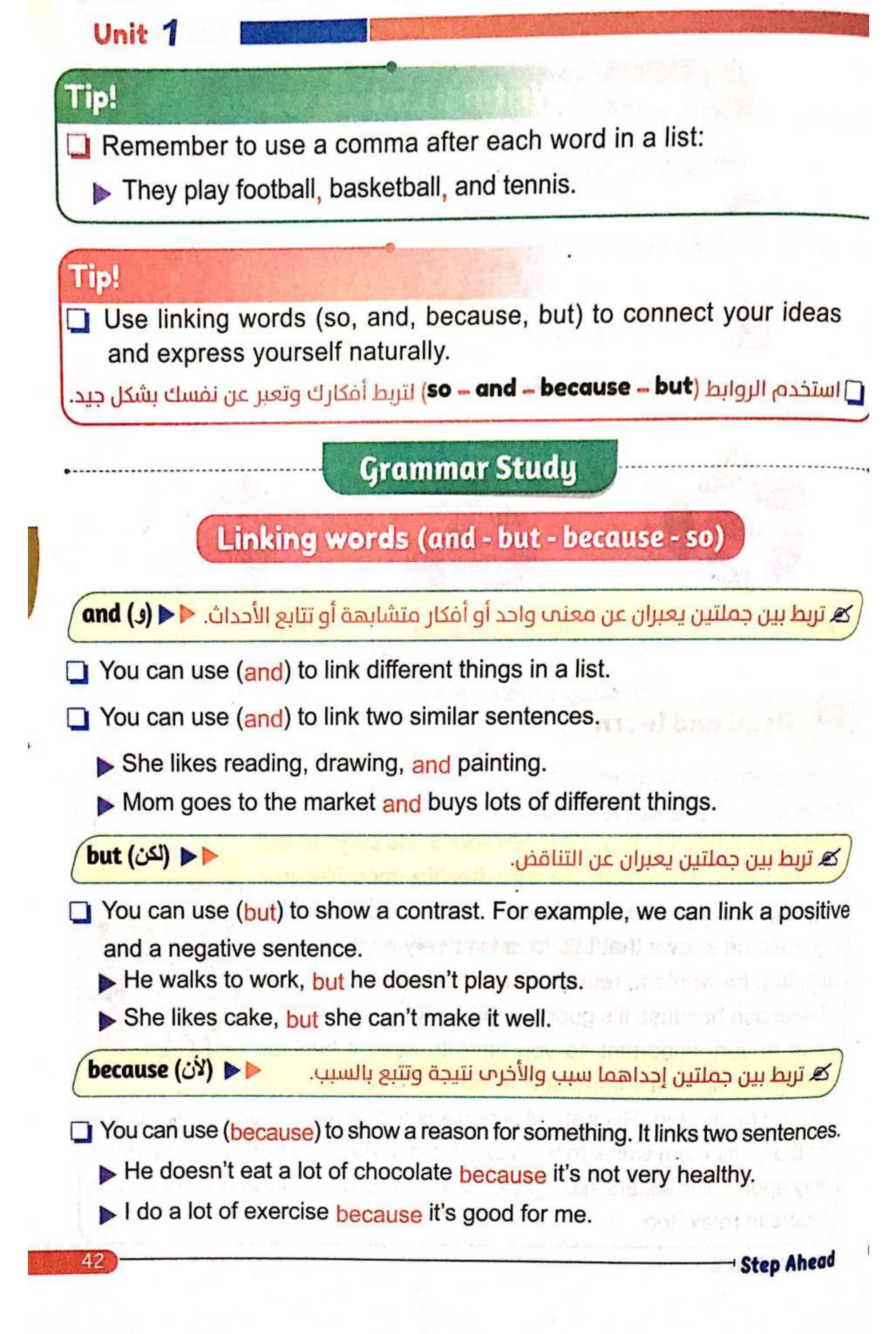


Read and learn

How do Seleem and his family stay healthy?



Seleem is a healthy boy. He loves sports. He plays tennis, football, and basketball. He eats healthy food like fruit, vegetables, and rice. He doesn't eat a lot of chocolate because he knows that this food isn't very healthy. In the evening, he wants to relax, so he reads a book "I do a lot of exercise because it's good for me," says Seleem. "Your heart is very important so you have to keep it healthy." Seleem is right. It's important to do exercise. He has a healthy family, too. His sister Amira plays tennis and his sister Dina plays football. His mom walks to work and his dad rides his bike, but they don't play sports. His sisters like to listen to music to relax. It's important for our hearts to relax, too.



Tip!

- Remember to use a comma after each word in a list:
  - They play football, basketball, and tennis.

Tip!

- Use linking words (so, and, because, but) to connect your ideas and express yourself naturally.
- استخدم الروابط (**so – and – because – but**) لتربط أفكارك وتعبر عن نفسك بشكل جيد.

Grammar Study

Linking words (and - but - because - so)

and (و) ▶▶ تربط بين جملتين يعبران عن معنى واحد أو أفكار متشابهة أو تتابع الأحداث.

- You can use (and) to link different things in a list.
- You can use (and) to link two similar sentences.
  - She likes reading, drawing, and painting.
  - Mom goes to the market and buys lots of different things.

but (لكن) ▶▶ تربط بين جملتين يعبران عن التناقض.

- You can use (but) to show a contrast. For example, we can link a positive and a negative sentence.
  - He walks to work, but he doesn't play sports.
  - She likes cake, but she can't make it well.

because (لأن) ▶▶ تربط بين جملتين إحداهما سبب والأخرى نتيجة وتتبع بالسبب.

- You can use (because) to show a reason for something. It links two sentences.
  - He doesn't eat a lot of chocolate because it's not very healthy.
  - I do a lot of exercise because it's good for me.

so (لذلك) ▶▶ تربط بين جملتين إحداهما سبب والأخرى نتيجة وتتبع بالنتيجة.

- You can use (so) to show the result of something. It can link two sentences.
  - He wants to relax, so he reads a book.
  - Your heart is very important, so you have to keep it healthy.

Exercises on Lesson 

1 Choose the correct word(s) in brackets:

1. I play football, (and – so – but) tennis.
2. Chocolate is unhealthy, (and – so – but) I like it.
3. Exercise is good for me, (and – so – but) I do it a lot.
4. Mohamed likes football, (and – so – but) he's not good at playing it.
5. You should eat a lot of vegetables (and – but – because) they are healthy.
6. Mazen wants to relax, (because – so – and) he reads a book.
7. Mona went to a clothes store (but – because – and) bought a new dress.
8. Seleem plays handball, tennis (because – but – and) volleyball.
9. Your heart is so important (and – but – so) you have to keep it healthy.
10. She likes sports, (so – because – but) she doesn't go to the club very often.

2 Complete sentences using one of the following:

and – but – so – because

1. Nadine goes to the pool .... she loves to swim.
2. Maggie doesn't like feeling tired in the morning, ... she goes to bed early.
3. Last weekend, we went to the beach .... we swam in the sea.
4. Hany likes to play basketball, ... he doesn't like to play football.
5. Fish, chicken, ... beans are all healthy food.

3 Rewrite the sentences using one of the following:

and – because – but – so

1. Wael likes fish. He doesn't like lamb.
   ▶ ....
2. Talia eats dates. She eats pomegranates. She eats figs.
   ▶ ....
3. I went to the library. I needed a book.
   ▶ ....
4. Lara wants to keep her heart healthy. She does exercise.
   ▶ ....
5. Walid and Shady went to the park. They played tennis.
   ▶ ....

4 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. boy - Seleem - healthy - is - a.
   ▶ ....
2. keep - heart - Lara - her - healthy - wants to.
   ▶ ....
3. a lot - chocolate - eat - doesn't - of - Seleem.
   ▶ ....
4. relax - read - to - I - book - a.
   ▶ ....
5. do - healthy - they - How - stay?
   ▶ .... ?
6. food - Chicken - are - beans - and - healthy.
   ▶ ....

5 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. how do tamer and his family stay healthy

▶ ....

2. she studied english arbic and math yesterday evening

▶ ....

3. his sister amira plays tennis

▶ ....

4. in the evening, seleem wants to relax

▶ ....

5. is dina good at playing tennis

▶ ....

6. mom bought carrots tomatoes potatoes and beans

▶ ....

6 Complete the sentences using one of the following:

so – because – and – but

1. I'm going to the sports center .... it's basketball club today.
2. I don't play basketball, ... I play volleyball.
3. I know it's on Fridays, ... my sister Rasha goes to the volleyball club.
4. The volleyball club is popular, ... there are always a lot of people.
5. I love playing volleyball .... I love tennis too.
6. There aren't any apples in the fridge, ... you can have an orange.
7. I want to be healthy .... I play a lot of sport.
8. I always eat a healthy diet .... I exercise every day.



Lesson 7 Story: Waiting for the rain

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



cub
صغير الأسد



two weeks later
بعد أسبوعين



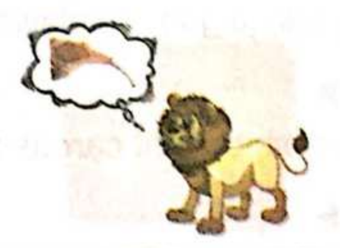
the ground was hard
الأرض كانت صلبة



strong feeling
شعور قوي



hunger
الجوع



hungry
جوعان



stomach
معدة



at the start of ...
فى بداية ....



sadly
بحزن



happily
بسعادة



tourists
سياح



pollution
تلوث

Adjectives:

right	مُحق	dead	ميت
lovely	جميل	cool	بارد

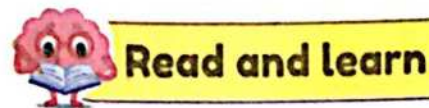
Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	PP
wait for	ينتظر (شخصًا - شيئًا)	waited for	waited for
relax	يسترخي	relaxed	relaxed
stay	يبقى - يقيم	stayed	stayed
express	يعبر	expressed	expressed
start	يبدأ	started	started
link	يربط	linked	linked
rain	تمطر	rained	rained
smell	يشم	smelled	smelled
happen	يحدث	happened	happened
love	يحب	loved	loved
die	يموت	died	died

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	PP
ride	يركب	rode	ridden
lie	يرقد	lay	lain
wake up	يستيقظ	woke up	woken up
fall	يسقط - يقع	fell	fallen
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
think	يفكر - يعتقد	thought	thought
have to	يجب - يلزم	had to	had to



Story

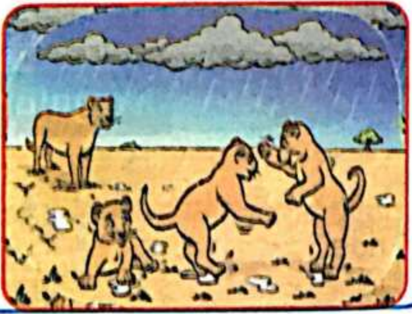


Waiting for the rain



It was another long, hot day in the grassland. Cub was with his mother, and he lay in the sunshine. But his mother looked worried. "I hope it rains soon," she said. "Why do you want it to rain?" asked Cub.

It's lovely and warm. We can play in the sunshine." "If it doesn't rain, the grass won't grow. Then we will be hungry," she answered. Cub started to laugh. What do you mean? We eat meat, not grass!" He ran away to play with his brothers and sisters, but his mother looked at the sky and worried. Two weeks later, it was still hot, and the ground was hard. There was no rain, and the plants were brown. Now, Cub had a strange feeling in his stomach: hunger. "Can we catch a rabbit to eat?" he asked his mother. "I can't find any rabbits," she said sadly. "Some rabbits have gone to other places. Some rabbits might be dead." "Why?" asked Cub. "Because there isn't any rain. Without rain, the grass can't grow. If the grass doesn't grow, the rabbits don't have any food." "Then we don't have any food!" answered Cub. Now he understood. "What can we do?" We must wait for rain. If it doesn't rain, we must move to a different place." "So let's go! We can't stay here without food!" said Cub, who was very worried now. His mother smelled the air. She saw a thin gray cloud start to move through the blue sky. "Let's wait one more day," she said. Cub went to bed hungry, but in the morning, he woke up to hear rain falling on the ground. He ran outside with his brothers and sisters, and they played in the cool water. Mother lion smiled. "Do you like the rain now, Cub?" she asked. "Yes, I do! Now the grass will grow, the rabbits will come back, and we won't be hungry anymore!" said Cub, happily.



Tip!

- When you write a story, try to imagine how your characters feel. Use interesting adjectives to describe their feeling and actions.
- عندما تكتب قصة حاول أن تتخيل كيف يشعر أشخاص القصة. استخدم صفات معبرة لتصف شعورهم وحركاتهم.

Grammar Study

Modal verbs (will - won't - can - can't - might - must)

will سوف

❑ تستخدم لتأكيد حدوث فعل فى المستقبل.

❑ This is something we know about the future.

▶ You will be hungry if you don't eat your sandwiches.

won't لن

❑ تستخدم لتأكيد عدم حدوث فعل فى المستقبل.

❑ This is something we know about the future.

▶ I won't go out next Friday. I want to relax at home.

can يستطيع

❑ تستخدم للتعبير عن الاستطاعة.

❑ تستخدم في بداية السؤال لطلب الإذن وللاستفسار عما إذا كان فعل هذا الشيء ممكنًا أم لا.

❑ We use it to express ability.

❑ We use it at the beginning of the question to ask if something is possible.

▶ I can ride a bike. ▶ Can we go out for a walk?

can't لا يستطيع

❑ تستخدم للتعبير عن عدم القدرة أو عدم الاستطاعة.

❑ We use it to express inability.

▶ Without rain, the grass can't grow.

might ربما - محتمل

❑ تسخدم للتعبير عن احتمال حدوث فعل في المضارع أو المستقبل.

❑ We don't know if this is true or not.

▶ Some rabbits might be dead.

must لازم - لا بد

❑ تستخدم للتعبير عن الإلزام أو الضرورة.

❑ We have to do this.

▶ The animals must wait for the rain to eat and drink.

لاحظ أن:

(**will** - **won't** - **can** - **can't** - **might** - **must**) لابد ان يتبعوا بالفعل فى المصدر [**stem verbs**].



Exercises on Lesson 7

1 Read the story again and match the questions with the answers:

'A'	'B'
1. Why is Mother lion worried?	a) He wants something to eat.
2. Why does Cub want his mom to catch a rabbit?	b) The grass will grow and the rabbits will return.
3. Why have the rabbits gone?	c) He felt hungry and worried.
4. How did Cub feel when he went to bed?	d) There isn't any grass for them to eat. They can't stay or they might die.
5. What did Cub hear the next morning?	e) It's hot and there isn't any rain.
6. What will happen now that it has rained?	f) He heard the rain falling.

2 Circle the correct words in brackets:

I've just come back from a trip to an amazing marine park where I saw many beautiful things. I think you (must / will) love Shaab Sabina near Hurghada. It is one of the most beautiful coral reefs I have seen. This coral reef is full of fish and marine animals. You (can't / will) see many different species of colorful fish and beautiful coral. If you're lucky you (might / must) see turtles and sharks. Don't worry, these sharks aren't dangerous. But please remember – you (won't / can't) walk on the coral, because this kills it. We (must / can't) try to protect the coral reefs for everyone to enjoy.

3 Complete sentences using one of the following:

1. There isn't any grass to eat, so the rabbits (can – will) be hungry.
2. Many animals have left the grasslands. Some animals (might – will) be dead.
3. When it doesn't rain, the grass (can't – might) grow.
4. There are dark clouds in the sky. It (might – can) rain soon.
5. (Can – Will) we take some photographs of the lions?
6. Cub (can't – can) sleep because he's hungry.

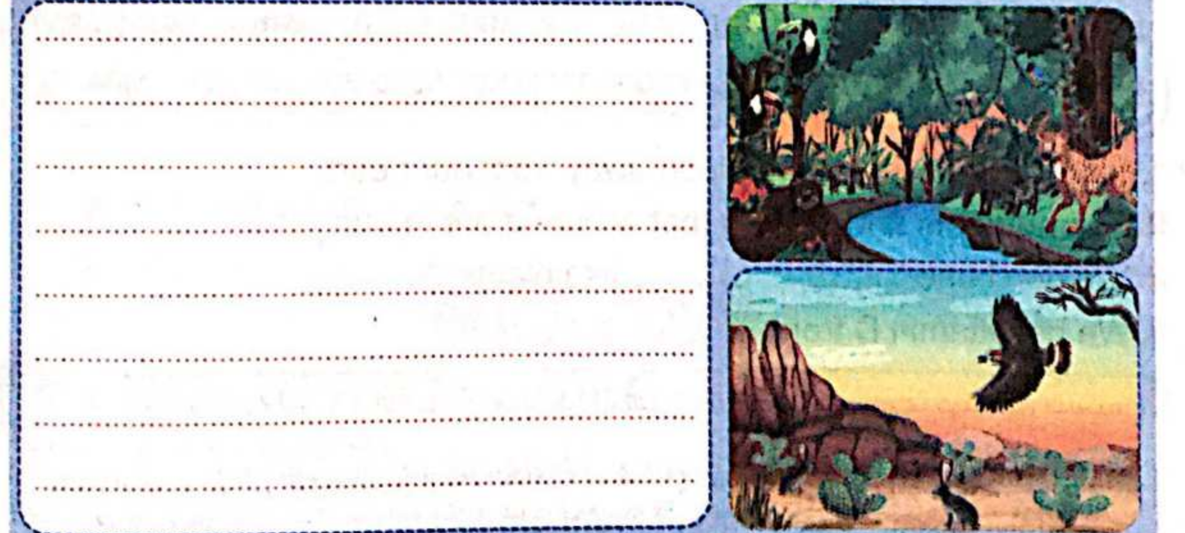
4 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. to rain - want - do - Why - you - it? ▶ .... ?
2. play - sunshine - the - We - can - in. ▶ ....
3. to - catch - we - Can - eat - a rabbit? ▶ .... ?
4. you - rain - Do - like - the - now? ▶ .... ?
5. back - will - The - come - rabbits. ▶ ....
6. in - They - cool - water - the - played. ▶ ....
7. dead - rabbits - be - might - Some. ▶ ....
8. rabbits - have - The - food - don't - any. ▶ ....
9. We - a different - must - place - to - move. ▶ ....
10. without - We - stay - food - here - can't. ▶ ....

5 Use your ideas to write a story about your ecosystem:

▶ Ideas to help you:

- *The characters – which animals live there?*
- *What do the animals have to do to survive?*
- *What problems might happen to these animals?*
- *The end of the story – what happens?*



Unit 1 Test 1



Total 30

1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (4Ms)

Mangrove trees help the environment in many ways. Mangrove trees protect the non-living things and the living things in the marine ecosystem. When there are storms, their deep roots stop the sand washing away. The forests are also a safe home for many animals.

1. Mangrove trees help the (beach – country – environment – village) in many ways.
2. Mangrove trees protect the non-living things and the living things in the (marine – river – mountain – desert) ecosystem.
3. The deep (leaves – roots – branches – seeds) stop the sand washing away.
4. The forests are a safe (house – village – cave – home) for many animals.

2 Listen and complete: (4Ms)

Our veins and arteries carry blood around our bodies. Arteries move blood away from our heart. Veins carry blood to it. The nutrients and oxygen that we need are in our blood. But we don't use carbon dioxide like plants do. Humans need sunlight, too. We can't make our own food, but we get vitamin D from sunlight.

1. .... move blood away from our heart.
2. The nutrients and oxygen that we need are in our ....
3. We don't use .... like plants do.
4. We get vitamin D from ....

ملحوظة هامة: عند إجابة سؤال الاستماع يجب على الطفل قراءة الأسئلة جميعها جيدًا قبل الاستماع ثم يقوم بالإجابة أثناء سماع النص.

☆ يقوم المُعلم أو ولي الأمر بمسح الكود الموجود للاستماع إلى نص الاستماع أو يقوم المُعلم أو ولي الأمر بالجلوس مقابل الطفل وقراءة النص له ويقوم الطفل بالإجابة أثناء الاستماع.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4Ms)

survive – ecosystem – rainforest – non-living – living things

An .... is all the animals and plants in an area. The ecosystem can be as small as a pond or as big as a forest. In an ecosystem, ... such as plants and animals interact with .... things such as water, rocks, and soil. The different species in an ecosystem make a community, and they all need each other to ....

4 Read the following text and then answer the questions below: (4Ms)

There are many deserts in the world and they are all dry. The weather there is usually very hot. In some deserts, there are a lot of rocks and in others there is a lot of sand. In the sand deserts, wind forms sand hills.
The plants and animals that live in the desert do not need much water. Desert animals can live for a long time without drinking. **They** sometimes get water from plants.
The leaves of desert plants are often very small. This helps the plants to keep water inside them.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Deserts are usually (wet – rainy – dry).
2. Desert animals sometimes get water from (sand – rocks – plants).

B Answer these questions:

3. What does the underlined word "They" refer to?
   ▶ ....
4. What is the weather like in deserts?
   ▶ ....

The Reader

5 A- Read and write T (True) or F (False): (4Ms)

1. Sharm El Luli beach is on the Mediterranean Sea. (   )
2. The Matterhorn is a beautiful mountain in Europe. (   )

5 Answer these questions:

3. Why does the river in Waimea Canyon look red?
▶ ....

4. Why do you think people surf down Cerro Negro?
▶ ....

6 Choose the correct answer:

(4Ms)

1. The river is an ecosystem (where - which - who - when) is usually wet.
2. She (will - can - must - can't) make dinner for the family. She's still young
3. She bought lots of things, (because - so - and - but) she had no money.
4. That's my sister Hagar (who - when - which - where) always gets high marks.

7 Order the words to make a correct sentence:

(2Ms)

1. mountain - to - They - close - a - live.
▶ ....

2. your - How - beat - does - often - heart?
▶ .... ?

8 Write a text of (55) words using the following guiding elements: (4Ms)

"Rain"

▶ Words to help you: rain - important - living things - plants - grow - eat - drink - animals - humans

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Theme (1)
I discover myself



Look around you
انظر حولك

In this unit I will ....

- learn words connected to geography, geology, and extreme weather.
- read and understand two articles about places in Africa.
- review the past simple and learn to use the present perfect.
- listen and understand people talking about important geographical features.
- understand a story about a storm-chaser.
- find out about volcanoes on the island of Java.
- write a description of an unusual geological formation and learn how to introduce a topic.
- understand a story about a balloon ride.

Objectives

Vocabulary	Extreme weather: dust storm, flood, hurricane, storm-chaser, thunderstorm Geological features: arch , canyon, crater, dun, erode, man-made, natural wonder ,valley, wetland Volcanoes: ash, erupt, lava, mud flow, soil Story: basket, diary, flame, ribbon gentle,
Language	- People have eaten fish from the river for thousands of years. - We have not visited Aswan. - Has he traveled in a plane or train? - Have you traveled on a ship? Yes, I have. - When was it? I traveled to Greece last year.
Reading	A text about the wonders of Africa; a text about man-made wonders of Africa: a story about a storm-chaser; a poem about the volcanoes of Java; a story about a ride in a balloon
Writing	A talk about a visit to a natural or man-made wonder; a description of a geographical formation: a diary entry of a balloon trip and a flight in an airplane
Speaking	Talking about places you have visited; asking and answering about experiences; giving a talk about a natural wonder: discussing extreme weather; discussing a poem
Listening	A discussion about the Nile: a talk about a wonder of Africa
Life skills	**Critical thinking:** understanding extreme weather **Resilience:** adapting to extreme weather
Values	**- Respect for the environment** **- Curiosity** **- Perseverance and cooperation**
Issues and challenges	**Environmental responsibility**
Integrated cross-curriculum topics	**Geography:** geological features

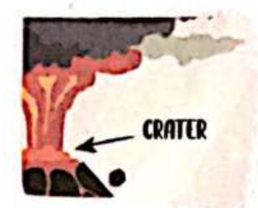
Lesson 1 Wonders of Africa



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



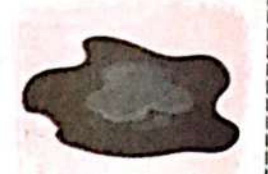

volcano
بركان



crater
فوهة بركان



erupt
يثور (للبركان)



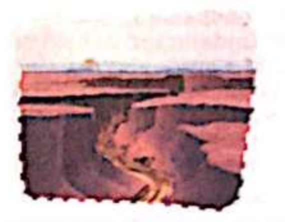
wetland
أرض رطبة (مبللة)



canyon
أخدود



valley
وادى



erode
يحفر - ينحت



sand dunes
كثبان رملية



natural wonders
عجائب طبيعية



fall = waterfall
شلال



lake
بحيرة



coasts
سواحل



mount = mountain
جبل



volcanic crater
فوهة بركانية

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

the African continent	قارة أفريقيا	the Arctic	القارة القطبية الشمالية
tropical rainforest	غابات مطيرة استوائية	the Antarctic	القارة القطبية الجنوبية
buffalo	جاموسة	dry place	مكان جاف
leopard	نمر منقط	hole	حفرة
border	حد (يفصل بين دولتين)	low area	منطقة منخفضة
at the top	فى القمة	shape (n)	شكل

Amazing places in Africa

Ngorongoro Crater	فوهة بركان نجورونجورو	Victoria Falls	شلالات فيكتوريا
Mount Kilimanjaro	جبل كيليمنجارو	The Sahara Desert	صحراء صحارا - الصحراء الكبرى

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	PP
form	يكون - يشكل	formed	formed
destroy	يدمر	destroyed	destroyed
climb	يتسلق	climbed	climbed
start	يبدأ	started	started
cover	يغطي	covered	covered
ask	يسأل	asked	asked
answer	يجيب	answered	answered
visit	يزور	visited	visited
live	يعيش	lived	lived
change	يغير	changed	changed
shape	يشكل	shaped	shaped
erode	يحفر	eroded	eroded

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	PP
read	يقرأ	read	read
fall	يسقط - يقع	fell	fallen
make a noise	يعمل ضوضاء	made a noise	made a noise
think	يفكر- يعتقد	thought	thought
run	يجري	ran	run
send out	يرسل - يبعث	sent out	sent out

Definitions

canyon	: a deep narrow place where a river runs between tall rocks.
crater	: the large round hole in the middle of a volcano.
dune	: a hill made of sand shaped by the wind.
erode	: changed or destroyed by rain, wind, the sea, etc.
erupt	: send out smoke and fire (from a volcano).
valley	: a low area of land between two mountains.
wetland	: an area of land that is often covered by water.



Read and learn

Did you know? هل تعلم؟

There are thousands of cenotes in Mexico. People go swimming and diving in their cool, clear water.

يوجد الآلاف من الحفر أو الفجوات المائية فى المكسيك. يذهب الناس للسباحة والغوص فى مياههم الباردة النقية.

Did you know? هل تعلم؟

There are more than 20 deserts around the world. Asia has the most deserts of the continents.

يوجد أكثر من 20 صحراء حول العالم. تضم قارة أسيا أكثر عدد من الصحاري بين القارات.

Wonders of Africa

The African continent is an amazing place, with mountains, deserts, lakes, valleys ❶, and rainforests. There are beautiful coasts, waterfalls, and volcanoes. It has some of the most famous natural wonders ❷ in the world. Let's read about four of these.

Ngorongoro Crater

The Ngorongoro Crater in Tanzania is the largest volcanic crater ❸ in the world. It formed when a volcano erupted ❹ millions of years ago. It is about 260 square kilometers. The sides of the crater are over 600 meters tall, and inside there are wetlands ❺ and forests. You can see lots of different animals, birds, and plants there. Many big animals live there, including lions, elephants, buffalos, and leopards.



Victoria Falls

This enormous waterfall is on the Zambezi River, on the border between Zambia and Zimbabwe. It's 1,708 meters wide and 108 meters high. Every minute, over 5 million cubic meters of water falls into a big canyon ❻ which the water has eroded ❼. When the water falls, it makes a lot of noise!



Mount Kilimanjaro

Mount Kilimanjaro is made of three volcanoes. Scientists think that it hasn't erupted for 360,000 years. Mount Kilimanjaro is the tallest mountain in Africa, at 5,895 meters. Every year, about 25,000 people climb it, but it is difficult. The mountain is very big and has lots of different ecosystems. It starts in the hot grassland. Farther up ❽, there are tropical rainforests ❾, and at the top there is snow and ice.

The Sahara Desert

The Sahara Desert is the largest hot desert in the world (the Arctic and the Antarctic are bigger but are cold deserts). It covers eleven countries and is nine million square kilometers - that's about the size of the USA! Some of the sand dunes ❿ can be about 180 meters high. Although it is a very dry place, some plants and animals live here, and people have lived here for thousands of years, too.



❶ أودية
❷ عجائب طبيعية
❸ فوهة بركانية
❹ يثور البركان
❺ أرض رطبة
❻ أخدود
❼ حفر - نحت
❽ في الأعلى
❾ غابات مطيرة استوائية
❿ الكثبان الرملية



Exercises on Lesson 

1 Read and complete the dialogue with the words:

erupted - wetlands - volcano - Crater - volcanic

Ashraf : Have you read about The Ngorongoro .... before?
Waleed : No. Where is it?
Ashraf : It is in Tanzania.
Waleed : How big is it?
Ashraf : It's the largest .... crater in the world. It formed when a volcano .... millions of years ago. It is about 26 square kilometers.
Waleed : Oh! It's very big. What's inside that large crater?
Ashraf : Inside there are .... and forests.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

wonders – world – continent – natural – valleys

The African .... is an amazing place, with mountains, deserts, lakes, ..., and rainforests. There are beautiful coasts, waterfalls, and volcanoes. It has some of the most famous .... wonders in the ....

3 Choose the correct word:

1. The (Canyon – waterfall – volcano) sends out smoke and fire.
2. The pyramids of Giza are one of the seven (valleys – wonders - canyons) of the word.
3. Africa is a big (continent – country – city).
4. The volcano has one (crater – rock – lake).
5. Egypt has (falls – rivers - coasts) on the Mediterranean Sea and the Red sea.
6. That volcano hasn't (eroded – climbed – erupted) for many years.
7. There are a lot of sand (holes – dunes – lakes) in the desert.

8. Lots of people climb (Hill – Mount – Canyon) Kilimanjaro every year.
9. Victoria (Valleys – Lakes – Falls) is 108 meters high.
10. Water has (eroded – erupted – fallen) a big canyon there.

4 Match the words to the definitions:

'A'	'B'
1. dune	a) changed or destroyed by rain, wind, the sea, etc.
2. wetland	b) the large round hole in the middle of a volcano.
3. canyon	c) a low area of land between two mountains.
4. erupt	d) an area of land that is often covered by water.
5. erode	e) a deep narrow place where a river runs between tall rocks.
6. valley	f) send out smoke and fire (from a volcano).
7. crater	g) a hill made of sand shaped by the wind.

5 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. the african continent is an amazing place
▶ ....
2. have you ever seen victoria falls
▶ ....
3. the ngorongoro crater is in tanzania
▶ ....
4. how high is mount kilimanjaro
▶ ....

6 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. Continent – The – an amazing – African – place – is.
▶ ....
2. An enormous – Zambezi River – waterfall – on – is – the.
▶ ....
3. crater – volcanic – a large – is – The Ngorongoro – crater.
▶ ....

4. made of –Mount – three – Kilimanjaro – is – volcanoes.

▶ ....

5. largest – desert – is – The Sahara Desert – the – hot.

▶ ....

6. high – Sand – 180 meters – dunes – be – can.

▶ ....

7. bigger – Sahara Desert – The Antarctic – is – the – than.

▶ ....

8. you – prefer – to visit – place – would – Which?

▶ .... ?

9. about – Victoria Fall – 108 meters – is – high.

▶ ....

10. Africa – the tallest – is – Kilimanjaro – in – mountain.

▶ ....

7 Read the lesson again and choose the correct answer:

1. In which country is the Ngorongoro Crater?
   a) Kenya   b) Tanzania
2. How big is the Ngorongoro Crater?
   a) 260 square kilometers   b) 600 meters
3. Which two countries is the Victoria Falls between?
   a) Kenya and Tanzania   b) Zambia and Zimbabwe
4. How wide is the Victoria Falls?
   a) 108 meters   b) 1,708 meters
5. How tall is Mount Kilimanjaro?
   a) 5,895 meters   b) 25,000 meters
6. What ecosystems do you find farther up Mount Kilimanjaro?
   a) grasslands   b) tropical rainforests
7. How big is the Sahara Desert?
   a) about the size of the USA   b) about the size of the Antarctic
8. How long have people lived in the Sahara Desert?
   a) millions of years   b) thousands of years



Lesson 2 Language

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



ancient Egyptians
المصريون القدماء



climate change
تغير المناخ



geographical facts
حقائق جغرافية



visit (n)
زيارة



affect
يؤثر



soup
شوربة

Conjugation of Verbs

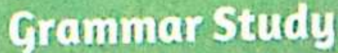
Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	PP
affect	يؤثر	affected	affected
explain	يشرح	explained	explained
order	يرتب	ordered	ordered
visit	يزور	visited	visited
listen	يسمع	listened	listened
talk	يتكلم	talked	talked
start	يبدأ	started	started
finish	ينهي	finished	finished
travel	يسافر	traveled	traveled
want	يريد	wanted	wanted
use	يستخدم - يستعمل	used	used
complete	يكمل	completed	completed



Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

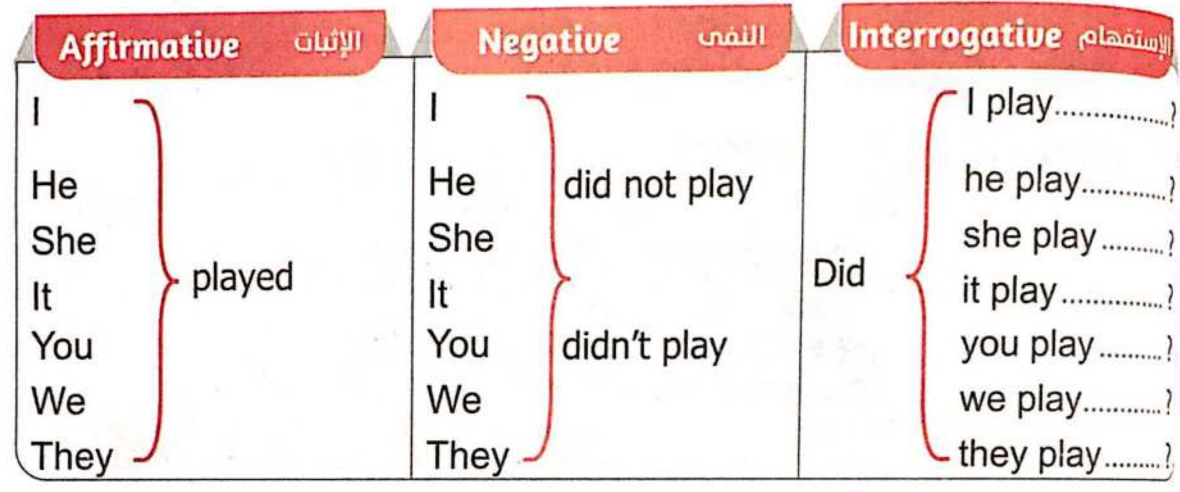
Present		Past	PP
tell	يخبرُ	told	told
go	يذهب	went	gone
get	يحصل على	got	got
meet	يقابل	met	met



Grammar Study



Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط



Affirmative الإثبات	Negative النفي	Interrogative الإستفهام
I / He / She / It / You / We / They } played	I / He / She / It / You / We / They } did not play / didn't play	Did { I play.........? / he play.........? / she play.........? / it play.........? / you play.........? / we play.........? / they play.........?

يتكون من التصريف الثاني للفعل:

- The Nile gave the ancient Egyptians food, like fish.
- They traveled to Italy on a ship.

- We use the past simple to talk about actions that started and finished in the past.

يستخدم للتعبير عن أحداث وقعت في الماضي أي بدأت وانتهت في الماضي.

- The Nile gave the ancient Egyptians important plants like papyrus.

- We sometimes use some words with the past simple as:

توجد كلمات دالة على زمن الماضي البسيط مثل:

yesterday	أمس	in the past	في الماضي
ago	منذ	last .... (week)	الماضي الأسبوع

▶ We visited our grandparents last Friday.

▶ They ate their lunch an hour ago.

o In the **negative form**, we use (didn't) before the stem verb.

☆ ننفي الماضي البسيط باستخدام (didn't) ثم الفعل في المصدر.

▶ I didn't see the accident yesterday.

☆ In the **interrogative form**, we use (Did) at the beginning of the question or after the question word with the stem verb.

☆ عند عمل سؤال على الماضي البسيط , نبدأ السؤال بـ (Did) أو نضعها بعد أداة الاستفهام مع الفعل في المصدر.

▶ Did you have your lunch? ➡ No, I didn't.

▶ Did she make a cake? ➡ Yes, she did.

▶ What did he do in the morning? ➡ He went to his work.

▶ What did you do last week? ➡ I visited my grandma.



Present Perfect Tense زمن المضارع التام



Affirmative الإثبات	Negative النفي	Interrogative الإستفهام
I → have finished	I → haven't finished	Have → I finished ....?
He / She / It } has finished	He / She / It } hasn't finished	Has { he finished .....? / she finished ...? / it finished ....?
You / We / They } have finished	You / We / They } haven't finished	Have { you finished ....? / we finished ......? / they finished ...?

يتكون من (has – have) + pp التصريف الثالث

▶ We have eaten dinner.

▶ He has made a big mistake.

○ We use it to talk about actions in the past that are still true now or actions that started in the past and continue to the present.

☆ يستخدم المضارع التام عند الحديث عن حدث ماضي مازال له تأثير للآن أو ما زال قائمًا ويحدث حتى الآن.

▶ People have eaten fish from the river for thousands of years.

▶ The mechanic has mended my father's car.

○ Also we use it to talk about an experience.

☆ أيضًا يستخدم المضارع التام عند الحديث عن الخبرات السابقة .

▶ Have you traveled on a ship? ➠ Yes, I've traveled on a ship.

▶ Have you climbed Mount Sinai? ➠ No, I've never climbed Mount Sinai.

○ We also use it with (ever) to ask about what someone has done in their life up to now.

.أيضًا يستخدم مع (ever) للإستفسار عن خبرة أو تجربة قد يكون تعرض لها الشخص من قبل.

▶ Have you ever eaten sushi?

▶ Has Omar ever been to Luxor and Aswan?

○ We also use it with (never) to talk about what someone has not done in their life up to now.

.أيضًا يستخدم مع (never) لنفي خبرة أو تجربة قد يكون تعرض لها الشخص من قبل.

▶ Have you ever eaten sushi? ➠ No, I've never eaten sushi.

▶ Has she ever ridden a donkey? ➠ No, she's never ridden a donkey.

○ We use some words with present perfect such as:

☆ تستخدم بعض الكلمات مع زمن المضارع التام مثل:

* **already** بالفعل	* **just** حالاً - توًا	* **yet** ليس بعد - حتى الآن
* **ever** دومًا	* **never** أبدًا - مطلقًا	* **for** لمدة * **since** منذ

▶ Mom has already cooked the food.

▶ Mom has cooked the food already.

☆ **In the negative form**, we either use (never) or put (not) after (has – have).

☆ عند النفي نستخدم كلمة (never) أو نضع (not) بعد (has - have).

▶ Have you ever traveled abroad? ➡ No, I've never traveled abroad.

▶ My mother hasn't made the cake.

▶ They haven't painted the picture yet.

☆ **In the interrogative form**, we use (has – have) at the beginning of the question or after the question word with the past participle.

☆ عند عمل سؤال على المضارع التام ، نبدأ السؤال بـ (has – have) أو نضع إحداهما بعد أداة الاستفهام مع التصريف الثالث.

▶ What have you done? ➡ I've phoned my friend.

▶ Has she ever seen a giraffe? ➡ Yes, she has.

▶ Have you ever been to America? ➡ No, I haven't.

An additional piece of information معلومة اضافية

Difference between past simple and present perfect
الفرق بين الماضي البسيط والمضارع التام

☆ We use the past simple to talk about actions that started and finished in the past at a particular time.

☆ يستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن أحداث بدأت و انتهت في الماضي في وقت معلوم.

▶ He was born in 2014.

▶ Mom made us a cake yesterday.

▶ I went to bed at ten last night.

☆ We use the present perfect to talk about actions in the past that are still true now without showing the time of its occurrence.

☆ . يستخدم المضارع التام عند الحديث عن حدث ماضي مازال له تأثير للآن دون الإشارة إلى وقت حدوثه.

▶ I've cut the grass and I've tidied all the leaves.

▶ The mechanic has mended my father's car.



Exercises on Lesson 2

1 Choose the correct word(s) in brackets:

1. I (has – have – am) finished my work.
2. Mom (is – has – have) cooked fish and rice.
3. They (are – has – have) done their homework.
4. We (has – have – are) listened carefully to our teacher.
5. He (is – has – have) mended his broken bike.
6. You (are – has – have) helped me a lot. Thank you.
7. They have (start – starts – started) their new game.
8. They (starts – started – have started) their new game two hours ago.
9. I (have bought – buys – buying) a new mobile.
10. I (bought – have bought – buy) a new mobile last month.
11. Grandma (have make – has made – make) us a delicious cake.
12. Grandma (have make – has made – made) us a delicious cake yesterday.
13. (Has – Have – Do) you done your homework?
14. (Have – Has – Did) you do your homework?
15. (Has – Have – Is) she finished cooking?
16. (Is – Did – Has) she finish cooking?
17. Has he (clean – cleaning – cleaned) his room?
18. Did he (cleaned – cleaning – clean) his room in the morning?
19. Have they (has – have – had) their lunch?
20. He (didn't – isn't – hasn't) paint new pictures last night.
21. I've (ever – never – yet) seen birds like these before. It's the first time.
22. Have you (ever – never – every) seen a tiger?
23. Amira didn't (go – went – gone) to the park last week.
24. We (never have – has never – have never) traveled to France.
25. Has she (ever – never – no) gone to Luxor and Aswan?
26. He didn't (seen – saw – see) his friend Hani yesterday.

2 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. change - river - How - the - affects - climate?

▶ .... ?

2. People - from - the river - have - fish - eaten.

▶ ....

3. Aswan - hasn't - yet - visited - He.

▶ ....

4. desert - the - you - Have - visited?

▶ .... ?

5. already - I - this story - you - have - told.

▶ ....

6. Have - ship - traveled - a - you - on?

▶ .... ?

3 Complete the text with the present perfect or past simple form of the verbs in brackets:

Reem and Ahmed are going to Luxor on holiday with their parents this year. They haven't visited (not/visit) Luxor before and they're very excited. They're going to travel to Luxor from Cairo.

It isn't the first time they 2 .... (travel) somewhere. They 3 .... (go) to Jordan two years ago.

Last Tuesday, Reem's father 4 .... (see) an article about a boat trip along the Nile on the internet. Yesterday, they 5 .... (decide) they would like to go on it. The trip lasts four days and the boat goes to Aswan. "I 6 .... (never/ sail) on a boat before," said Reem. "I'm really excited."

4 Complete the sentences with the present perfect from these verbs:

make – never meet – travel – never sail – not play – tell

1. Waleed .... by bus, taxi, and train.
2. My uncle .... us about his trip to Cairo.
3. Grandma .... ful medames for dinner.
4. We .... on a boat in the Red Sea.
5. Aya .... a famous person.
6. Amir and Fares .... tennis before.

5 Write questions and short answers as in the example:

1. Fares / ever travel / by train? (false)
   ▶ Has Fares ever traveled by train? ➡ No, he hasn't.
2. Youssef and Wael / see / an elephant? (false)
   ▶ ....? ➡ ....
3. Mom / ever make / fesikh for Sham El-Nessim? (true)
   ▶ ....? ➡ ....
4. Yara / visit / Cairo? (false)
   ▶ ....? ➡ ....
5. They / ever visit / another country? (true)
   ▶ ....? ➡ ....
6. you / eat / saydeya? (true)
   ▶ ....? ➡ ....

Lesson 3 Man-made wonders of Africa



Amazing Places in Africa



the Sphinx
أبو الهول



the Pyramids of Giza
أهرامات الجيزة



the Valley of the Kings
وادي الملوك



the Afrikaans Language Monument
النصب التذكاري للغة الأفريكانية



Canopy Walk
ممشى أعالي الأشجار (كانوبي)



the Temple of Abu Simbel
معبد أبو سمبل

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



ruins
آثار



century
قرن



stone walls
حوائط صخرية



visitor
زائر



monuments
آثار



stone columns
أعمدة صخرية



man-made
من صنع إنسان



archaeologist
عالم آثار



incredible things
أشياء لامثيل لها



history
تاريخ



paintings
رسومات




rocks
صخور



caves
كهوف



bridge
كبري - جسر



adventure
مغامرة



all over the world
في كل أنحاء العالم

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	PP
develop	يطور	developed	developed
learn	يتعلم	learned (learnt)	learned (learnt)
open	يفتح	opened	opened

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	PP
see	يرى	saw	seen
build	يبنى	built	built
sell	يبيع	sold	sold
take turns	يتبادل الأدوار	took turns	taken turns
show	يعرض - يبين	showed	shown

Read and learn

Did you know? هل تعلم؟



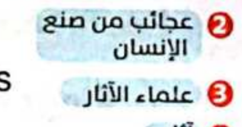
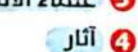
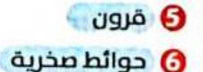
▶ There are 54 countries in Africa today. People think there are 1,500 - 2,000 different languages! The main language is Arabic, and there are many other important ones such as Swahili and Yoruba, as well as English, French and Portuguese.

◀ يوجد 54 دولة فى أفريقيا اليوم. يعتقد الناس أنه يوجد من 1500 إلى 2000 لغة مختلفة فى أفريقيا. اللغة الرئيسية هى اللغة العربية ويوجد العديد من اللغات الهامة الأخرى مثل اللغة السواحيلية واليوروبا علاوة على الإنجليزية والفرنسية والبرتغالية.

Man-made Wonders of Africa

The natural world in Africa is beautiful, but people in this continent have made many incredible things ❶, too.

Some of the most important man-made wonders ❷ are in Egypt: the Pyramids of Giza, the Sphinx, the temples of Abu Simbel, and the Valley of the Kings. People come from all over the world to visit these places and learn about Egypt's history. But there's a lot more to see in Africa.

❶ أشياء لا مثيل لها

❷ عجائب من صنع الإنسان

❸ علماء الآثار
❹ آثار

❺ قرون
❻ حوائط صخرية
❼ أثر
❽ النصب التذكاري للغة الأفريكانية
❾ أعمدة صخرية

Paintings in a cave



In North Africa, there are paintings on rocks and in caves which people made thousands of years ago. They often show animals and people.

Archaeologists ❸ think that the Sahara wasn't as dry in the past because some of the paintings show animals such as crocodiles that live in water.

Ruins of Great Zimbabwe



In Zimbabwe, there are the ruins ❹ of Great Zimbabwe, an important city which was built between the 11th and 15th centuries ❺. It had very large stone walls ❻, and people here sold lots of things to different countries around the world. A newer monument ❼ is in South Africa. The Afrikaans Language Monument ❽ is made of stone columns ❾ and opened in 1975.



Man-made Wonders of Africa

(10) محمية طبيعية



The Afrikaans language developed when people from other countries came to Africa. The language has words from lots of different countries, and is now used in South Africa and Namibia.

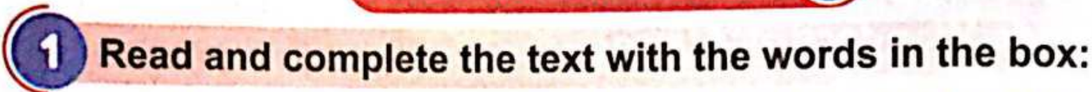
The Canopy Walk



Visitors to Rwanda can have an amazing rainforest adventure on The Canopy Walk in Nyungwe National Park (10). The bridge was built in 2010. It's 160 meters long and 74 meters above the ground. It is in the highest part of the trees, so visitors can see monkeys and birds.

Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:



Kings – Pyramids – man-made – history – wonder

The natural world in Africa is beautiful, but people in this continent have made many incredible things, too. Some of the most important .... wonders are in Egypt: the .... of Giza, the Sphinx, the temples of Abu Simbel, and the Valley of the .... People come from all over the world to visit these places and learn about Egypt's ....

2 Read the following text and then answer the questions:

In North Africa, there are paintings on rocks and in caves which people made thousands of years ago. They often show animals and people. Archaeologists think that the Sahara wasn't as dry in the past because some of the paintings show animals such as crocodiles that live in water.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. People made those painting (hundreds – thousands – millions) of years ago.
2. The paintings show animals and (birds – insects – people).

B Answer these questions:

3. What's there in North Africa?

▶ ....

4. Why do Archaeologists think the Sahara wasn't as dry in the past?

▶ ....

3 Read the text again and match the questions and answers:

'A'	'B'
1. In which country are the Sphinx and the temples of Abu Simbel?	a) South Africa and Namibia.
2. What can you see on rocks and inside some caves in North Africa?	b) They think it wasn't as dry in the past as it is now.
3. How do archaeologists think that the Sahara Desert has changed?	c) Egypt.
4. When did people build the city of Great Zimbabwe?	d) stone columns.
5. What is the Afrikaans Language Monument made of?	e) paintings of animals and people.
6. In which countries do people speak the Afrikaans language?	f) It's 74 meters above the ground.
7. What is special about the Canopy Walk in Nyungwe National Park in Rwanda?	g) between the 11th and 15th centuries.

4 Complete the text with the words in the box:

Archaeologists - man-made - natural - volcano - world

The Great Pyramid is 1 ...., which means that people made it. 2 .... can learn a lot about history from buildings like this. We can also learn a lot from 3 .... wonders of the 4 .... such as the Ngorongoro Crater. For example, we know this was once a 5 .... which erupted millions of years ago.

5 Order the words to make correct sentences:

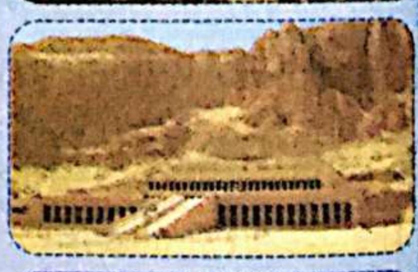
1. People - the pyramids - of - come - Giza - to visit.
   ▶ ....
2. paintings - are - caves - There - in.
   ▶ ....
3. animals - Paintings - show - and - people.
   ▶ ....
4. in - was - 2010 - Walk - The Canopy - built.
   ▶ ....
5. would - Which of - visit - you - like - the places - to?
   ▶ .... ?

6 Write a paragraph of (55) words on a natural wonder in Africa:

▶ Ideas to help you:

- *What is the wonder?*
- *Why is it important?*
- *Some information about it.*






....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Lesson 4 Story: The storm-chaser



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



storm-chasers مطاردوا العواصف



thunderstorm عاصفة رعدية



dust storm عاصفة ترابية



hurricane إعصار



extreme weather طقس قاسٍ



floods فيضانات



snow جليد - ثلج

photographer مصور

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

forecast	يتنبأ	**causes**	أسباب
event	حدث	**frightened**	خائف
online competition	مسابقة على الإنترنت	**loud**	عالٍ (للصوت)
prize	جائزة	**global warming**	الاحتباس الحراري

Prepositions

at home	في البيت	interested in	مهتم بـ
close to	بالقرب من	go away	يسافر – يذهب بعيدًا

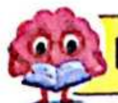
Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	PP
mix	يخلط - يمزج	mixed	mixed
work	يعمل	worked	worked
stay	يظل - يمكث	stayed	stayed
study	يدرس - يذاكر	studied	studied
help	يساعد	helped	helped
arrive	يصل	arrived	arrived
happen	يحدث	happened	happened
fill	يملأ	filled	filled

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	PP
forecast	يتنبأ	forecast	forecast
win	يفوز	won	won
find	يجد	found	found
keep	يحافظ	kept	kept
say	يقول	said	said
drive	يسوق	drove	driven
fly	يطير	flew	flown



Read and learn

The storm-chaser مطاردوا العواصف

Kamal's parents often went to other countries for their work. Usually, Kamal and his younger sisters stayed at home with their grandparents. Two years ago, Kamal's parents said, "You can come with us when we next go away ❶ for work."

Kamal was very **excited** because his parents were storm-chasers! These are people who travel to places where a hurricane or another form of extreme weather ❷ is forecast. They get very close to the extreme weather event to study it.

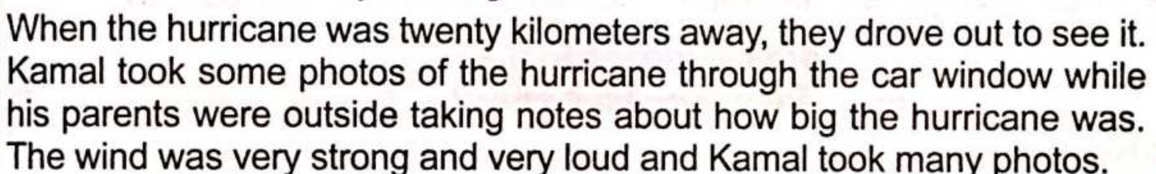
❶ نذهب(نسافر)بعيدًا
❷ طقس قاس
❸ إعصار
❹ عواصف رعدية
❺ دولة السودان
❻ الاحتباس الحراري



Kamal and his parents flew in a big plane to the USA where they could study hurricanes ❸.

"How can I help you when you work?" Kamal asked them when they arrived. "You can take some photos for us," they said, and they took something from a bag. It was a new camera!

Kamal had seen thunderstorms ❹ in Egypt, but not a hurricane. It was very **exciting**.



When the hurricane was twenty kilometers away, they drove out to see it. Kamal took some photos of the hurricane through the car window while his parents were outside taking notes about how big the hurricane was. The wind was very strong and very loud and Kamal took many photos.

"Are you frightened?" his dad asked Kamal.

"No, because I know you'll keep me safe," said Kamal.

When the storm came too near to them, they drove away.

Since that trip, **Kamal has been to many other places** with his parents. He has seen heavy snow in the mountains, floods in Sudan ❺ and amazing dust storms in the desert. He has learned a lot about the **causes** of extreme weather, such as global warming ❻, and he has taken hundreds of photos.

Last year, his mom said, "**Why don't** you send some photos to this online competition?"

So Kamal sent the photos you can see below. He won first prize for child photographers, and he also found that he is one of the world's youngest storm-chasers!

The Lesson Notes

☆ [exciting - excited] هاتان الكلمتان تم ورودهما في الدرس.

o exciting (adj) مثير — o صفة تستخدم في الغالب لوصف غير عاقل

▶ The trip was exciting.

o excited (adj) مثار - فرحان — o صفة تستخدم في الغالب لوصف عاقل

▶ I'm excited to see Faris and Dina.

نفس الأمر ينطبق على الصفات:

(tired - tiring - interested - interesting - surprised - surprising - amazed - amazing ...)

Additional Information معلومات اضافية

been to – gone to

☆ **been to** — سبق له زيارة مكان أو أماكن- ذهب إلى مكان وعاد منه

☆ **gone to** — ذهب إلى مكان ولم يعد بعد أو في طريقه إلى مكانٍ ما

▶ My uncle has been to Europe three times.

▶ They have gone to Matrouh. They will come back next Sunday.

causes – reasons

☆ **cause** سبب — سبب يحدث بشكل طبيعي أو مفاجئ وغير متعمد

☆ **reason** مبرر — مبرر لتصرف ما أو حدث ما

▶ What is the cause of the accident?

▶ The cause of this destruction (دمار) is the flood.

▶ What is the reason for looking for clean sources of energy?

▶ The bus broke down (تعطل). That is the reason for coming late.

Why don't

☆ **Why don't** لما لا — إحدى أساليب الاقتراح

▶ Why don't you send some photos to this online competition?

➡ That's a good idea.

Exercises on Lesson 4

1 Complete the sentences with the words in the box:

dust storm - hurricane - thunder storm - flood - storm-chaser - snow

1. The .... followed the thunderstorm in his car.
2. The .... was white and it looked like ice cream!
3. The .... was very noisy. The sky was black and it rained all the afternoon!
4. After the ...., there was a lot of dust on my parents' new car.
5. During the ...., there were winds of 150 km/h.
6. After two days of rain, there was a .... and there was water in the roads.

2 Read the text again and write T (True) or F (False):

1. Storm-chasers are only interested in thunderstorms. T / F
2. Kamal went outside to take notes about the hurricane. T / F
3. Kamal was very frightened by the hurricane. T / F
4. Kamal won a prize for his photos. T / F

3 Read the text again and write short answers:

1. Has Kamal traveled to the USA?
   ▶ Yes, he has.
2. Was Kamal frightened when he saw his first hurricane?
   ▶ ....
3. Have Kamal's parents been to Sudan?
   ▶ ....
4. Has Kamal been to the desert?
   ▶ ....
5. Did Kamal enter a writing competition last year?
   ▶ ....

4 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. have you ever seen an extreme weather event
   ▶ ....
2. kamal traveled to the usa last january
   ▶ ....
3. there was a flood near the nile in sudan
   ▶ ....
4. did you go to giza on tuseday
   ▶ ....

5 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. storm-chasers - Kamal's - parents – were.
   ▶ ....
2. Egypt - has - thunderstorms - seen - in - Kamal.
   ▶ ....
3. Kamal - photos - hurricane - took - of the - some.
   ▶ ....
4. kind of - does - What - take - photos - Kamal?
   ▶ .... ?
5. are - thunderstorms - Storm-chasers - in - interested.
   ▶ ....
6. photographers - child - won - for - first prize - He.
   ▶ ....
7. some - Why - you - send - don't - photos?
   ▶ .... ?

6 Complete the sentences with present perfect form of the verbs in brackets:

1. Kamal's parents .... (travel) to many different countries.
2. Kamal .... (take) a photo of many extreme weather events.
3. Kamal .... (learn) a lot about taking photos from his parents.
4. His parents .... (help) other people to understand extreme weather events.
5. Kamal .... (never / be) in a dangerous situation (موقف خطير).



Lesson 5 Volcanoes

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



lava حمم بركانية



soil تربة



erupt يثور



mud flow تدفق الطين



ash رماد - بقايا



fire نار



smoke دخان



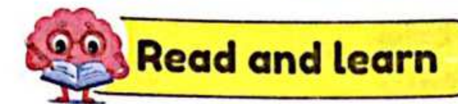
island جزيرة

Prepositions:

come out of	يخرج من	mix with	يختلط بـ
come back	يعود - يرجع	thank for	يشكر علي

Definitions

lava	: hot liquid rock that comes out of volcanoes.
soil	: the top part of the earth in which plants grow.
erupt	: when volcanoes erupt, fire and rocks come out of the top.
mud flow	: soft, wet material that moves down mountains.
ash	: something soft and gray that you find when a fire stops burning.





Read and learn — A poem

The Volcanoes of Java



Let me take you to the pretty island of
Java, Where almost everything is made
of lava!
It comes from Java's volcanoes,
Which look down on the villages below.

The names of the volcanoes are:
Salak, Guntur, Karaha, Malabar....
But there are another thirty-nine,
You can find their names online!

When they erupt, there's ash and fire,
Smoke fills the air, going higher and higher,
The island people have to go away,
To a safe place where they can stay.

The lava and ash mix with mud flows,
This makes soil where good food grows,
When the farmers come back to the land,
They thank the volcanoes for the helping hand.

Exercises on Lesson 5



1 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

lava – mud flow – volcanoes – island – erupt

Samir: Hello, Hosam, What are you doing?
Hosam: Hi, Samir I'm reading a book.
Samir: What's it about?
Hosam: It's about the pretty .... of Java.
Samir: Why is it pretty?
Hosam: Because almost everything there is made of ....
Samir: Where does the lava come from?
Hosam: It comes from Java's ....
Samir: Are there volcanoes there?
Hosam: Yes, there are three. When they ...., there's ash and fire everywhere.

2 Match the words to the definitions:

'A'	'B'
1. mud flow	a) something soft and gray that you find when a fire stops burning.
2. erupt	b) the top part of the earth in which plants grow.
3. ash	c) hot liquid rock that comes out of volcanoes.
4. lava	d) soft, wet material that moves down mountains.
5. soil	e) when volcanoes erupt, fire and rocks come out of the top.

3 Complete the sentences with the words in the box:

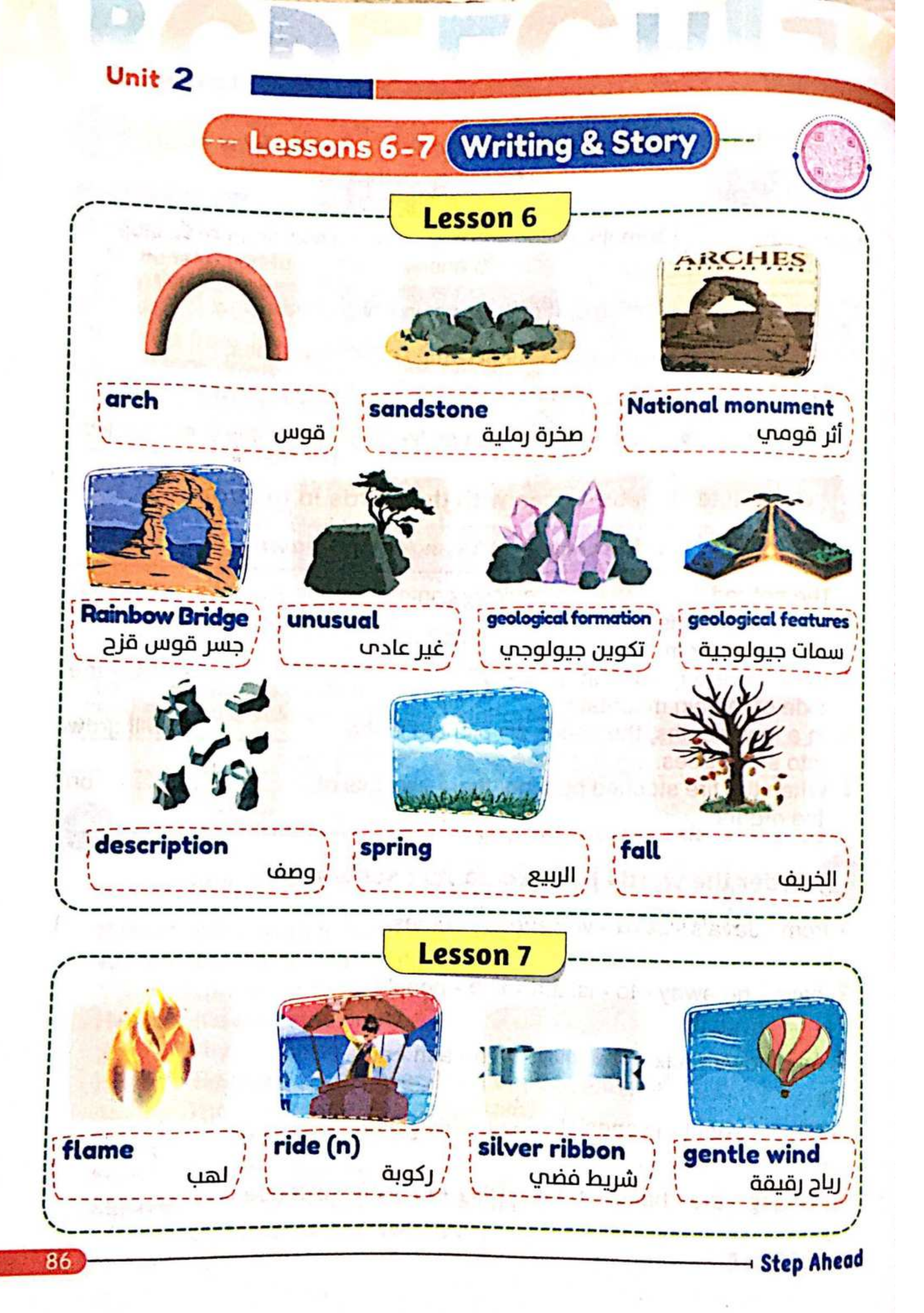
ash – erupt – soil – mud flow – lava

1. The hot red .... quickly come down the side of the volcano.
2. If the volcanoes ...., fire and rocks will come out of the top of them.
3. After three days of rain, a heavy .... came down the side of the big mountain.
4. In a few months, the seeds we planted in the .... will grow into small trees.
5. When the fire stopped burning, there was lots of .... on the ground.

4 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. from - Java's - Lava - volcanoes - comes.
   ▶ ....
2. have - go away - to - island - The - people.
   ▶ ....
3. mud flows - mix - The lava - with - ash - and.
   ▶ ....
4. What - about - is special - Java - the island - of?
   ▶ .... ?
5. helping - the - hand - thank - They - for - the volcanoes.
   ▶ ....

Lessons 6-7 Writing & Story



Lesson 6

English	Arabic
arch	قوس
sandstone	صخرة رملية
National monument	أثر قومي
Rainbow Bridge	جسر قوس قزح
unusual	غير عادى
geological formation	تكوين جيولوجي
geological features	سمات جيولوجية
description	وصف
spring	الربيع
fall	الخريف

Lesson 7

English	Arabic
flame	لهب
ride (n)	ركوبة
silver ribbon	شريط فضي
gentle wind	رياح رقيقة





Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

pilot	طيار	palm trees	أشجار النخيل
diary	مفكرة	enormous	ضخم
until	حتى	burning gas	غاز مشتعل
perfect weather	طقس مثالى	oasis	واحة

Prepositions:

give it back	يعيدها	pick up	يلتقط
fall out of	يسقط من	point to	يشير إلى

Adjectives:

late	متأخر	special	خاص
funny	ممتع	important	مهم
clear	صافي	quiet	هادئ
silver	فضي	tiny	ضئيل - صغير جدًا

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	PP
watch	يشاهد	watched	watched
want	يريد	wanted	wanted
look like	يشبه	looked like	looked like
pick up	يلتقط	picked up	picked up
point to	يشير إلى	pointed to	pointed to
follow	يتبع	followed	followed
touch	يلمس	touched	touched
discuss	يناقش	discussed	discussed
laugh	يضحك	laughed	laughed
include	يشمل	included	included
arrive	يصل	arrived	arrived
decide	يقرر	decided	decided
introduce	يقدم	introduced	introduced
describe	يصف	described	described
imagine	يتخيل	imagined	imagined
drop	يُسقط	dropped	dropped

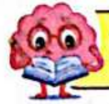
Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	PP
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
write	يكتب	wrote	written
give	يعطي	gave	given
blow	تهب (للرياح)	blew	blown

shine	تشرق	shone	shone
burn	يحرق	burnt (burned)	burnt (burned)
light	يشعل - يضيء	lit	lit

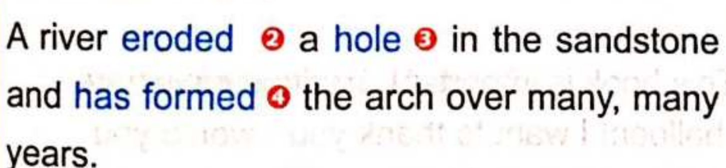
Definitions

ribbon	: a long, soft piece of material
gentle	: slow, not fast or extreme
basket	: people use this to carry things, and a big one can carry people
mud flow	: soft, wet material that moves down mountains
light / lit	: make / made something start to burn
flame	: the burning gas that you see in a fire



Read and learn





Rainbow Bridge National Monument - Utah, USA

Rainbow Bridge is one of the largest natural arches ❶ in the world. It is also 200 million years old. It is on Lake Powell in Utah, USA. It is 88 meters tall and it is made of red and brown sandstone.

A river eroded ❷ a hole ❸ in the sandstone and has formed ❹ the arch over many, many years.

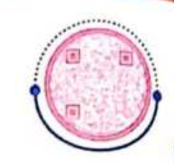
Rainbow Bridge has been a National Monument ❺ since 1910. If you want to visit it, you have to take a boat, ride a horse, or walk to it.

It is in a very hot desert. So, you should visit it in the spring or in the fall ❻.

Don't forget to take your water bottle and a sun hat!

❶ أقواس
❷ حفر - شق
❸ فتحة - ثقب
❹ كوّن
❺ أثر قومي
❻ الخريف

Story



A Balloon Ride

"Come inside, Mariam," said Mom. "It's late."

Mariam was in the garden. She loved watching the birds. She thought about the places they visited and the things they saw.

"I would love to fly," she said.

"Like a bird?" Mom laughed. "You are funny!"

Mariam's dad came home. He was happy.

"Look! I've got tickets ❶ for the Luxor hot air balloons festival! We'll see balloons in lots of colors."

Mariam was very excited ❷. All week, she thought about the festival.

Finally, the day arrived. Mariam was watching everything when she saw a tall man.

He had a special coat ❸ and a hat on his head. He was a hot air balloon pilot ❹ ! As he walked away, a book fell out of his bag. He didn't know. Mariam ran to pick it up."Look, Mom!" She said. "It's a book about hot air balloon flights." "Oh no!" said Mom. "It's his diary!" It's about everywhere he's been. "We must give it back!" said Mariam. Together they ran until they found the man. "Hello! Did you drop this book?" said Mariam's dad.

"Thank you!" the man said "This book is important. I write everywhere that I have traveled to in the balloon! I want to thank you - would you like to have a ride?" He pointed to a beautiful balloon. "Yes, please!" they said.

"It's perfect weather today, with no rain and a gentle wind ❺," he said. They followed him to the balloon and climbed into the basket. Mariam watched as he lit ❻ the flame ❼.

❶ تذاكر
❷ متحمس
❸ معطف خاص
❹ طيار
❺ رياح رقيقة
❻ ينير - يشعل
❼ لهب - شعلة

As the air inside the balloon got hot, he dropped the rope and the balloon slowly climbed into the air.
Soon, they were flying over the beautiful city of Luxor. The wind blew them gently through the clear blue sky. They saw green fields and sandy deserts, palm trees ⑧, dunes, and mountains. They flew over enormous statues ⑨ and beautiful temples. The Nile looked like a silver ribbon ⑩. Everything was quiet, and the houses, cars, and boats were tiny ⑪. The sun shone and it felt like they could touch the clouds.
"Now I know what it's like to be a bird!" said Mariam.

⑧ النخيل
⑨ تماثيل ضخمة
⑩ شريط فضي
⑪ صغير جدا



Tip!

- Writers often use descriptive language. In this story, the Nile isn't a silver ribbon, but it looks like one. This helps the reader to make a picture in their mind as they read.
- يستخدم الكُتاب فى الغالب لغة وصفية فى هذه القصة، النيل ليس شريط فضي ولكنه يبدو هكذا، وهذا يساعد القارئ أن يُكون صورة فى ذهنه أثناء القراءة.

Exercises on Lessons



1 Read the story again then ask and answer the questions:

1. What does Mariam want to be able to do?
   ▶ ....
2. Why was Mariam's dad happy?
   ▶ ....
3. What happened when the tall man walked away?
   ▶ ....
4. What was in the book?
   ▶ ....
5. What did they fly over?
   ▶ ....

2 Write the correct definition in the space:

basket - flame - gentle - light / lit - ribbon

1. a long, soft piece of material ....
2. slow, not fast or extreme ....
3. people use this to carry things, and a big one can carry people ....
4. the burning gas that you see in a fire ....
5. make / made something start to burn ....

3 Order words to form correct sentences:

1. balloon - was - air - pilot - He - a hot.
   ▶ ....
2. read - Did - book - you - this?
   ▶ .... ?
3. have - you - Would - a ride - to - like?
   ▶ .... ?
4. He - beautiful - a - pointed - balloon - to.
   ▶ ....
5. gently - wind - The - them - below.
   ▶ ....
6. Mariam's - happy - Why - dad - was?
   ▶ .... ?
7. Would - like - go - you - to - there?
   ▶ .... ?
8. in - is - hot - Rainbow Bridge - desert - a very.
   ▶ ....
9. forget - Don't - your - hat - to take - sun.
   ▶ ....
10. birds - She - watching - the - loved.
   ▶ ....
11. I - love - fly - would - to.
   ▶ ....
12. balloons - We - lots of - see - in - will.
   ▶ ....

4 You are going to write a description of an unusual geological formation for a tourist brochure.

1. Decide which formation you want to write about.
2. Do research about your geological feature and make notes. Find or draw a picture of it.
3. Write your description for the brochure.

▶ ....
....
....

Tip!

❑ Remember these tips when you write:

- ▶ To introduce the topic, start the first sentence with the name of your geological formation.
- ▶ Write why this geological formation is important or special in the same sentence.
- ▶ Next, include the location and age of the formation.
- ▶ Explain how it was formed.
- ▶ Describe what it looks like and how big it is.
- ▶ Add extra, interesting information about it.
- ▶ Tell people how they can visit it.

5 Imagine you went in a hot air balloon. Make notes to describe the weather and the things you saw.

1. Choose one of these geological features, or think of another one.

coast – delta – desert – dune – mountain – oasis – valley

2. Now think about the weather. Was it perfect for a balloon ride, or was there extreme weather?

▶ ....
....
....

Unit 2 Test 2

Total
30



1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (4Ms)

In Zimbabwe, there are the ruins of Great Zimbabwe, an important city which was built between the 11th and 15th centuries. It had very large stone walls, and people here sell lots of things to different countries around the world.

1. In Zimbabwe, there are the (temples – ruins – mountains – craters) of Great Zimbabwe.
2. Great Zimbabwe is an important city which was built between the 11th and 15th (year – age – month – centuries).
3. It had very large (stone – sand – mud – dust) walls.
4. People here (buy – make – sell – get) lots of things to different countries around the world.

2 Listen and complete: (4Ms)

The Ngorongoro Crater in Tanzania is the largest volcanic crater in the world. It formed when a volcano erupted millions of years ago. It is about 260 square kilometers. The sides of the crater are over 600 meters tall, and inside there are wetlands and forests. You can see lots of different animals, birds, and plants there. Many big animals live there, including lions, elephants, buffalos, and leopards.

1. The Ngorongoro Crater is the largest .... crater in the world.
2. It formed when a volcano .... millions of years ago.
3. It is about .... square kilometers.
4. Inside the crater, there are .... and forests.

ملحوظة هامة: عند إجابة سؤال الاستماع يجب على الطفل قراءة الأسئلة جميعها جيدًا قبل الاستماع ثم يقوم بالإجابة أثناء سماع النص.
يقوم المُعلم أو ولي الأمر بمسح الكود الموجود للاستماع إلى نص الاستماع أو يقوم المُعلم أو ولي الأمر بالجلوس مقابل الطفل وقراءة النص له ويقوم الطفل بالإجابة أثناء الاستماع.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4Ms)

causes – extreme – floods – warming – storms

Kamal has been to many places with his parents. He has seen heavy snow in the mountains, ... in Sudan and amazing dust .... in the desert. He has learned a lot about the .... of extreme weather, such as global ...., and he has taken hundreds of photos.

4 Read the following text and then answer the questions below: (4Ms)

The River Nile is possibly the most famous river in history. It is about 6.670 km in length and is the longest river in the world. The River Nile is formed from the White Nile and the Blue Nile. These rivers meet in Sudan and go towards the sea. In the past, the ancient Egyptians lived near the Nile to get water and food for themselves and their animals. The Nile helped the ancient Egyptians in traveling as it was the quickest and the easiest way to travel from place to place.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The River Nile is formed from (one – two – three) Niles.
2. The Nile is (the longest – longer than – as long as) any other river in the world.

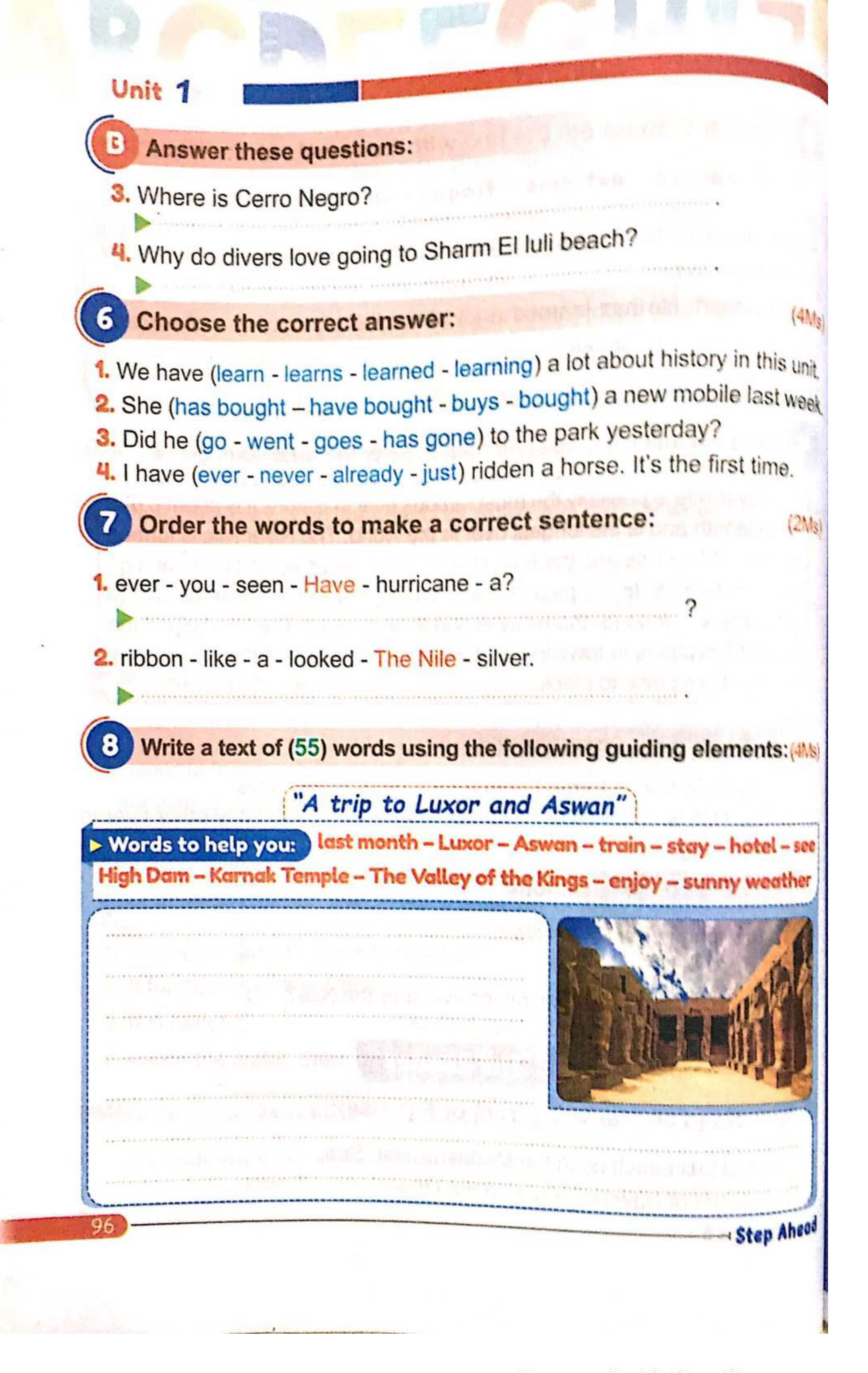
B Answer these questions:

3. How long is the River Nile?
   ▶ ....
4. Why did the ancient Egyptians live near the Nile?
   ▶ ....

The Reader

5 A- Read and write T (True) or F (False): (4Ms)

1. Sharm El Luli beach is on the Mediterranean Sea. (   )
2. The Islands of Hawaii are part of the USA. (   )



B Answer these questions:

3. Where is Cerro Negro?
▶ ....

4. Why do divers love going to Sharm El luli beach?
▶ ....

6 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. We have (learn - learns - learned - learning) a lot about history in this unit.
2. She (has bought – have bought - buys - bought) a new mobile last week.
3. Did he (go - went - goes - has gone) to the park yesterday?
4. I have (ever - never - already - just) ridden a horse. It's the first time.

7 Order the words to make a correct sentence: (2Ms)

1. ever - you - seen - Have - hurricane - a?
▶ .... ?

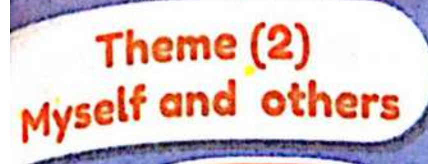
2. ribbon - like - a - looked - The Nile - silver.
▶ ....

8 Write a text of (55) words using the following guiding elements: (4Ms)

"A trip to Luxor and Aswan"

▶ **Words to help you:** last month – Luxor – Aswan – train – stay – hotel – see High Dam – Karnak Temple – The Valley of the Kings – enjoy – sunny weather

....
....
....
....
....
....
....





How we use our world
كيف نستخدم عالمنا

In this unit I will ....

- talk about natural resources, and renewable and non-renewable resources.
- understand a play about finding dinosaur bones.
- make sentences and questions using the second conditional.
- describe resources in ancient Egypt and do a quiz.
- understand a story about a blind girl and describe the physical properties of objects.
- understand a description of science experiment.
- write a report about a visit to a place and develop a topic using facts, definitions, and details.
- understand a story about an experiment.
- use reported speech.

Objectives

Vocabulary	Natural resources: coal, date, economy, fertile, flax, fossil fuels, linen, mud, raw materials States: boil, gas, fixed shape, freeze, liquid, melt, solid Physical properties: bend, comfortable, hard, mass, odor, rough, soft, sticky, texture Stories: dig, flamingo, hole, sink, shovel, skeleton, tunnel
Language	- If we go to the museum, we will see dinosaur bones. - If it snowed in October, I would be very surprised. - "I like going to the sports center," said Fares. - Fares said he liked going to the sports center.
Reading	A text about what we can do with natural resources; a story about looking for dinosaur bones; an article and quiz about resources in ancient Egypt; a story about a blind girl; a story about an experiment
Writing	Quiz questions; developing a topic; writing a report about a place you have visited including facts, details, and definitions
Speaking	Describing possible situations; describing objects in the classroom; asking and answering questions about natural resources; reporting what people say
Listening	**A describing game**
Life skills	**Problem solving:** using renewable resources
Values	**Appreciation of science Curiosity**
Issues and challenges	**Environmental responsibility**
Integrated cross-curriculum topics	**Science:** natural resources

Lesson 1 What can we do with natural resources?

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس





Extra Vocabulary — كلمات إضافية

electricity	كهرباء	container	وعاء
solar energy	طاقة شمسية	freezer	فريزر
renewable	متجدد	steam	بخار
non-renewable	غير متجدد	nature	الطبيعة
objects	أشياء	naturally	بشكل طبيعي

Prepositions:

for example	على سبيل المثال	change from .... to ...	يتغير من ... إلي ....
such as	مثل	turn to	يتحول إلى
pick up	يلتقط	go for a holiday	يذهب في إجازة
pour into	يسكب في	sign to	لافتة لِ (إلى)

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	PP
flow	يتدفق - يسيل	flowed	flowed
heat	يسخن	heated	heated
look	ينظر	looked	looked
ask	يسأل	asked	asked
need	يحتاج	needed	needed
pick up	يلتقط	picked up	picked up
pour	يسكب	poured	poured
turn	يتحول	turned	turned
melt	يذوب	melted	melted
boil	يغلي	boiled	boiled
thank	يشكر	thanked	thanked
use	يستخدم	used	used
change	يغير	changed	changed

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	PP
go	يذهب	went	gone
see	يري	saw	seen
get	يحصل على	got	got
make	يصنع	made	made
say	يقول	said	said
burn	يحرق	burnt (burned)	burnt (burned)
build	يبني	built	built
give	يعطي	gave	given
have	عنده - لديه	had	had
know	يعرف	knew	known
become	يصبح	became	become
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
freeze	يثلج	froze	frozen



Read and learn

Did you know? هل تعلم؟

The highest waterfall in the world is Angel Falls in Venezuela, which is about 1,000 meters high.

أعلى شلال في العالم هو شلالات أنجل في فنزويلا والتي يبلغ ارتفاعها لحوالي 1000 متر.

Salma's journey to Marsa Alam

It's summer and Salma and her family are going to Marsa Alam for a holiday. Salma looks out of the car window and sees a sign ❶ to the Sukari gold mine.

"What's a mine, mom?" she asks.

"It's a place where we get raw materials ❷ from the ground, like gold and coal ❸."

gold

"Are raw materials the same as natural resources ❹?" asks Salma.

"Yes, usually," says Mom. "Natural resources are things we can use from nature, like wood and soil. We use them to make the things we need. For example, we use wood to make tables, stone to build houses, and plants for food. The sun is a natural resource because it gives us solar energy ❺ to make electricity." "Our teacher says that coal is non-renewable, is that right?"

"Yes," says Mom. "Some natural resources like solar energy are renewable ❻ - this means that we can get more of the resource naturally after we use it. But some natural resources are non-renewable ❼. When we burn fossil fuels ❽ such as coal and gas, we can't use them again." "What's the difference between coal and gas?" asks Salma.

Marsa Alam

"Coal is a solid ❾," says Mom. "You can pick up a solid object, like your bag. It has a fixed shape. You can't usually see gases, although some have a pale color. Gases move and change shape ❿."

"What about liquids, Mom?"

❶ لافتة
❷ مواد خام
❸ فحم
❹ موارد طبيعية
❺ طاقةشمسية
❻ متجددة
❼ غير متجددة
❽ الوقود الحفري
❾ صلب
❿ تغير الشكلها

Salma's journey to Marsa Alam

"Liquids don't have a fixed shape. You can't pick up a liquid which isn't in a container ⑪. Liquids can flow ⑫ - for example, you can pour water into a cup.

"Did you know that some solids, liquids, and gases can change from one state to another ⑬?" says Dad. "If you boil liquid water, it turns to steam ⑭ which is a gas. If you freeze liquid water, it turns to ice which is a solid. When ice melts, it becomes a liquid again!"

"Yes, we learned that at school," says Salma. "But I understand it better now. Thanks Mom and Dad!"

steam

⑪ وعاء - حاوية
⑫ تتدفق - تسيل
⑬ من حالة لأخرى
⑭ بخار

Exercises on Lesson 

1 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

fuels - resources - renewable - solar - materials

Salma : What's a mine, mom?
Mom : It's a place where we get raw .... from the ground, like gold and coal.
Salma : Are raw materials the same as natural ....?
Mom : Yes, usually. Natural resources are things we can use from nature, like wood and soil.
Salma : Is the sun a natural resource?
Mom : Of course because it gives us .... energy to make electricity.
Salma : Our teacher says that coal is non-renewable, is that right?
Mom : Yes. Some natural resources like solar energy are .... - this means that we can get more of the resource naturally after we use it. But some natural resources are non-renewable. When we burn fossil fuels such as coal and gas, we can't use them again.
Salma : Thanks a lot, Mom.
Mom : You're welcome.

2 Match "A" with "B":

'A'	'B'
1. Raw materials are things that come from the ground	a) same as natural resources.
2. Raw materials are often the	b) we can get more after we use it.
3. Non-renewable energy means	c) like gold or coal.
4. The sun is a natural resource because it	d) we can't use it again.
5. Renewable energy means	e) gives us solar energy to make electricity.

3 Choose the correct words(s) in brackets:

1. Water is a (liquid - solid - gas).
2. A liquid and (solid - stone - gas) don't have a fixed shape.
3. When you (freeze - melt - cool) ice, it turns to a liquid.
4. Ice is a (gas - liquid - sloid).
5. A (gas - solid - liquid) has a fixed shape.
6. When you (boil - freeze - melt) water, it turns to a gas.
7. You can pick up a (liquid - gas - solid).
8. When you (melt - boil - freeze) water, it turns to ice.
9. A (liquid - gas - ice) flows.
10. When you melt ice, it turns to a (gas - solid - liquid).
11. You can't usually see a (solid - liquid - gas).
12. When you boil water, it turns to a (gas - liquid - solid).
13. The (lake - pond - mine) is a place where we get raw materials.
14. When you freeze water, it turns to (solid - ice - gas).
15. Solar energy is (renewable - non-renewable).
16. Coal and gas are (fossil fuel - renewable - coins).
17. (Water - Steam - Ice) is a gas.
18. Gold and coal are natural (fuels - colors - resources).
19. We can get (raw - pale - liquid) materials like gold and coal from under the ground.
20. Coal is (renewable - non-renewable) because you can only burn it once.
21. Solar energy is a (natural - man-made - non-renewable) resource.
22. Steam is a (liquid - gas - solid).



4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

boiled - froze - ice - steam

In science class today, our teacher put some water in a pan. She heated the water until it ❶ .... Some of the water turned to ❷ .... Then we poured the water into a container, and put it in a freezer. The water ❸ .... and turned to ❹ ....

5 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. raw - get - We - from - the ground - materials.
   ▶ ....
2. is - resource - The - a - sun - natural.
   ▶ ....
3. resources - are - natural - Some - renewable.
   ▶ ....
4. has - shape - It - a - fixed.
   ▶ ....
5. shape - a fixed - have - Liquids - don't.
   ▶ ....
6. pour - into - a cup - water - can - You.
   ▶ ....
7. energy - us - solar - The sun - gives.
   ▶ ....

6 Read the text again and complete with the correct word:

freeze - boil - gas - liquid - melts - solid - state - water

1. Solids, liquids, and gases can change from one .... to another.
2. When you .... water, it turns to steam.
3. Water is a ....
4. If you .... water, it turns to ice.
5. Steam is a ....
6. When ice gets warm, it .... and turns to liquid.
7. Ice is a ....

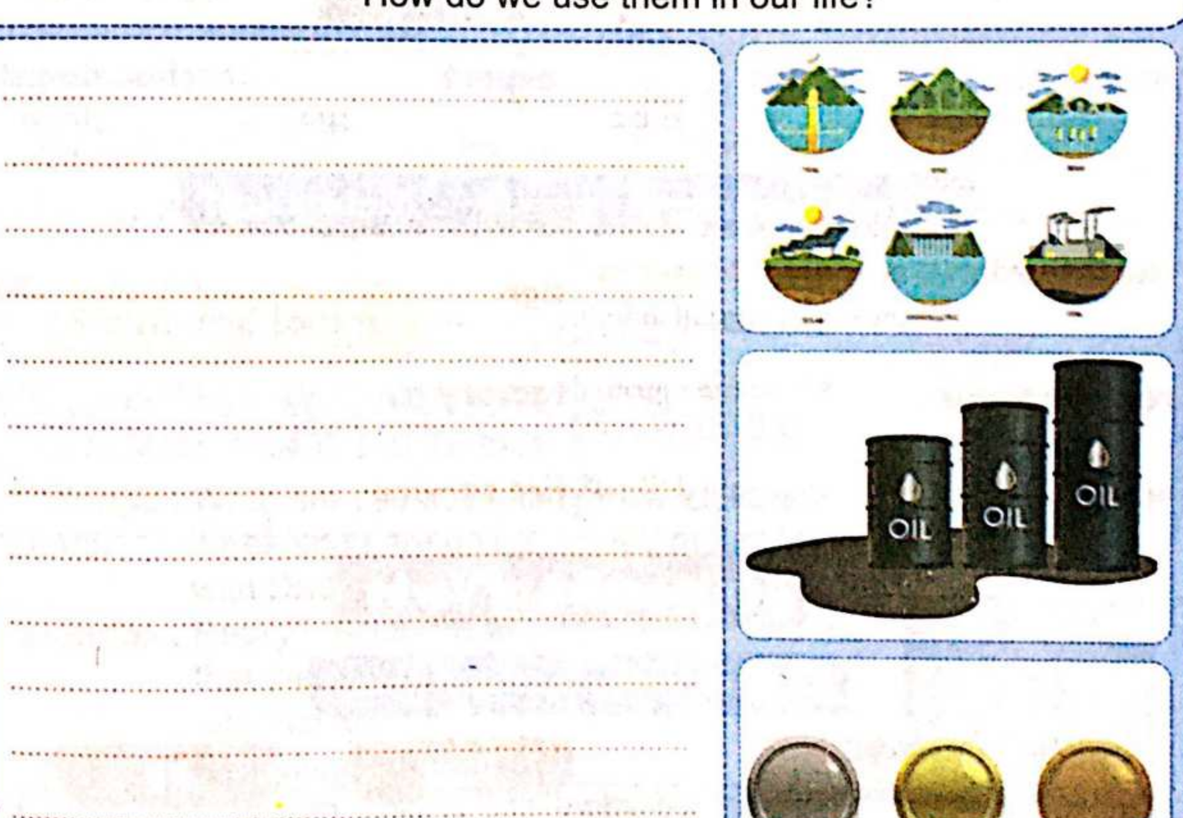
7 Read and circle T (True) or F (False):

1. Liquids have a fixed shape. T / F
2. Ice is water in solid form. T / F
3. When you boil water, it turns into a gas. T / F
4. Solids can flow like gases. T / F
5. Honey is soft and sticky. T / F
6. Some solids melt when you freeze them. T / F

8 Write a text of (55) words using the following guiding elements:

"Natural Resources"

▸ Ideas to help you:
- What are the natural resources you know?
- How do we use them in our life?





Lesson 2 Language

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس

English	Arabic
dig	يحفر
hole	حفرة
shovel	جاروف
museum	متحف
skeleton	هيكل عظمي
bones	عظام
expert	خبير
archaeologist	عالم آثار

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
the Egyptian Geological Museum	المتحف الجيولوجي المصري	sign	لافتة
real dinosaur	ديناصور حقيقي	factory	مصنع
whole	كل - كامل	fire service	مطافي

Conjugation of Verbs

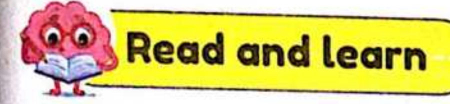
Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

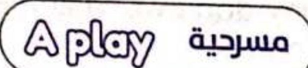
Present		Past	PP
call	يتصل بـ	called	called
start	يبدأ	started	started
visit	يزور	visited	visited

Present		Past	PP
talk	يتحدث	talked	talked
work	يعمل	worked	worked
snow	تمطر ثلجًا	snowed	snowed
happen	يحدث	happened	happened
decide	يقرر	decided	decided
imagine	يتخيل	imagined	imagined
plan	يخطط	planned	planned

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	PP
put	يضع	put	put
read	يقرأ	read	read
tell	يخبر	told	told
think	يفكر - يعتقد	thought	thought
find	يجد	found	found
buy	يشتري	bought	bought
dig	يحفر	dug	dug







Scene 1 : Inside a room in Grandpa's house

❶ عظام الديناصور
❷ حفرة
❸ جاروف

Grandpa : What are you doing tomorrow, children?
Donia : Tarek and I are going into the mountains with Dad.
Grandpa : Really? When I was a boy, people told me that there were dinosaur bones ❶ in the mountains.
Tarek : **Real** dinosaur bones?
Grandpa : I think so. I never saw them, but my friend Ali was digging a hole ❷ there and he found some bones.
Tarek : Wow! Donia, let's take a shovel ❸ when we go to the mountains. We might find dinosaur bones too!

Scene 2 : In the car

Tarek : What would you do if we found dinosaur bones in the mountains, Donia?

Donia : If we found dinosaur bones, I would take them home. If there were a lot of dinosaur bones, I would give one to Grandpa. He's very interested in dinosaurs!

Tarek : Hmm. I don't know. I think we should call an expert ❹. If I found dinosaur bones, I would call the museum and tell them.

Donia : That's a good idea. And if the archaeologists from the museum came, maybe they would find a whole dinosaur skeleton ❺.

Tarek : And if the skeleton went in the museum, they would put our names on the sign. It would say "Found by Donia and Tarek."

Donia : Wow! That's cool.

❹ خبير
❺ هيكل عظمي
❻ هيا نبدأ الحفر
❼ غزالة

Scene 3 : In the mountains

Donia : Here's the shovel. Let's start digging ❻.

Tarek digs in the ground.

Tarek : Look! I've found a bone, Donia! Is it a dinosaur bone?

Donia : I don't think they're heavy enough to be dinosaur bones. They're just animal bones... Maybe a goat or a gazelle ❼.

Tarek : You're right. I've never seen a dinosaur bone in real life. Only photos!

Dad : Well, why don't we visit the Egyptian Geological Museum in Cairo soon?

Donia : If we go to the museum, we'll see really big dinosaur skeletons.

Tarek : If we see real dinosaur skeletons, we'll know what to look for next time. Can we go tomorrow, Dad?

Grammar Study

If conditionals

The First Conditional [IF إذا - لو]

IF + present simple	▶▶▶	*future simple*
IF + مضــارع بسيط	▶▶▶	*will* + المصدر

▶ If I save enough money, I will buy a present for Mom.

▶ She will come to the party if she finishes her work.

- We use the first conditional to describe events which will probably happen in the future.

☆ تستخدم الحالة الاولى لِ (If) للتعبير عن احتمال حدوث شئ في المستقبل.

The Second Conditional [IF إذا - لو]

IF + past simple	▶▶▶	would ('d) + stem verb
IF + ماضي بسيط	▶▶▶	would ('d) + المصدر

▶ If we found dinosaur bones, I would take them home.

▶ They would put our names on the sign if the skeleton went in the museum.

- We use the second conditional to describe events, but they probably won't happen.

☆ تستخدم الحالة الثانية لِ (If) للتعبير عن حدث غير محتمل حدوثه

Exercises on Lesson 2

1 Read the sentences and write "a" or "b":

a- These events will probably happen.
b- We imagine these events, but they probably won't happen.

1. If I found a phone on the ground, I would take it to the police. ( )
2. If I visit my grandparents on the weekend, I'll take them a present. ( )
3. I'll play games with my friends if I see them in the park today. ( )
4. If I met a famous person, I wouldn't know what to say. ( )
5. I'd miss my friends if my family moved to a new city. ( )
6. If we go to the shopping mall on Saturday, I'll buy a new book. ( )

2 Choose the correct word(s) in brackets:

1. If I (find – will find – found) dinosaur bones, I would call the museum and tell them.
2. If he (go – goes – will go) to the museum, he'll see really big dinosaur skeletons.

3. If the skeleton went in the museum, they (will put – would put – won't put) our names on the sign.
4. If she sees real dinosaur skeletons, we (will – would - wouldn't) know what to look for next time.
5. You (save – will save – won't save) trees if you recycle magazines.
6. They (will – won't – would) find their way home if they had a map.
7. They (will – won't – wouldn't) get home early if they find a taxi.
8. She (can – will – would) live on a palace if she was a princess.
9. If I was a musician, I would (play – plays – played) the guitar.
10. He would be lazy if he (eat – ate – eats) too much.
11. He'd (drive – drove – drives) a tractor if he was a farmer.
12. If he (will be – would be – was) an astronaut, he'd fly to the moon.
13. If we (go – would go – went) to bed early, we'll get up early.
14. If he eats healthy food, he (will – would – is) be strong.
15. She (buys – bought –would buy) a villa with a garden if she had lots of money.
16. If he (wins – won – would win) a million pounds, he'd give money to the poor.
17. How would you feel if you (see – saw – seen) a snake?
18. You (will – won't – wouldn't) cause pollution if you go everywhere by car.
19. If you (look – looked – looking) at the box, you'll see your present.
20. If I (have – had – having) a horse, I'd ride it every day.
21. They (would – will – won't) travel around the world if they were rich.
22. If he (has – have – had) a new car, he'd drive to the beach.
23. If she had more time, she (won't – will – would) do the washing up.
24. If you don't do your homework, your teacher (will – won't – wouldn't) be angry.
25. If I (win – won – wins) a medal, I'd be very happy.
26. If you go to the circus, you (see – will see – would see) clowns.
27. She (won't – will – would) go out if she finishes her homework.

3 Complete the sentences with the words in the box:

hit - was younger - won - would make - would melt

1. If I .... the science competition, I would get a prize.
2. If we didn't burn fossil fuels, we .... less pollution.
3. That ball would move quickly if you .... it hard.
4. The ice .... if you put it outside.
5. If Grandpa ...., he would play tennis with me.

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets:

1. If I .... (have) 10 million LE, I .... (buy) a chocolate factory.
2. If we .... (see) a fire, my parents .... (call) the fire service.
3. If it .... (snow) in October, I .... (be) happy.
4. If my family .... (go) to the park later, I .... (tell) you.
5. If I .... (have) a lot of money, I would build a home for animals.
6. If I visited Cairo, I .... (go) to the Egyptian Geological Museum.
7. I .... (buy) a present for my mom if we went to the store.
8. If we stayed in Hurghada on vacation, I .... (swim) every day.
9. I would visit my friend every day if she .... (be) in hospital.
10. If I flew in a hot air balloon, I .... (not be) frightened.

5 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. tomorrow – are – you – What – doing?
   ▶ ....?
2. dinosaur – find – We – bones – might.
   ▶ ....
3. He – interested – very – dinosaurs – is – in.
   ▶ ....
4. we – call – should – think – I – an expert.
   ▶ ....
5. found – bone – I – have – a.
   ▶ ....
6. it – a – bone – dinosaur – Is?
   ▶ ....?
7. a – bone – I – never – have – dinosaur.
   ▶ ....



Lesson 3 Resources in Ancient Egypt

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



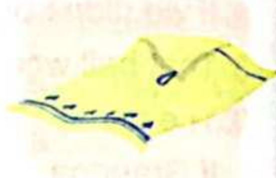
economy الأقتصاد



copper نحاس



flax نبات الكتان



linen قماش الكتان





cotton قطن





metal معدن



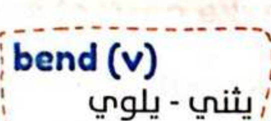
papyrus ورق بردي





fertile خِصب





bend (v) يثني - يلوي



strong rope حبال قوية

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة	limestone	حجر جيري
temples	معابد	square bricks	طوب مربع
buildings	مباني	tools	أدوات
lakes	بحيرات	cooking pots	أواني الطهي
Eastern Desert	الصحراء الشرقية	knives	سكاكين

other countries	دول أخرى	**successful**	ناجح
jewelry	حُلي - مجوهرات	**useful**	مفيد
medicine	طب - دواء	**soft**	طري
agriculture	الزراعة	**skin**	جلد
crops	محاصيل	**the Nile Delta**	دلتا النيل

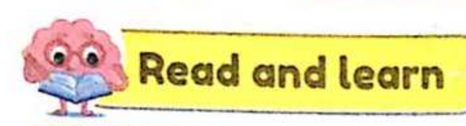
Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	PP
learn	يتعلم	learned (learnt)	learned (learnt)
turn	يتحول	turned	turned
discover	يكتشف	discovered	discovered
transport	ينقل	transported	transported
help	يساعد	helped	helped
answer	يجيب	answered	answered
flood	يفيض - يغمر	flooded	flooded
die	يموت	died	died
dry	يجفف	dried	dried

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	PP
sell	يبيع	sold	sold
keep	يحافظ	kept	kept
bend	يثني - يطوي	bent	bent
grow	ينمو	grew	grown
show	يقدم - يعرض	showed	shown



Read and learn



Resources in Ancient Egypt

Hello, my name's Mr Taha and I work at the museum. I know your class is learning about natural resources, so I'm here today to talk about resources in ancient Egypt!

Did you know that ancient Egypt was very successful because it had good natural resources? Agriculture ❶ was a very important part of the economy ❷ of ancient Egypt. The Nile flooded ❸ every year and made the soil fertile ❹.

Farmers grew lots of different crops, such as cotton and rice.

Do any of you know what flax is? This tall plant has blue flowers. The plant turns yellow after the flowers die. Flax was important in ancient Egypt. People used it to make linen for clothes, as well as for strong rope.



Salt ❺ was also a very important resource in ancient Egypt, and they sold it to other countries, too. People used salt to keep food fresh. It was also useful in medicine ❻ and agriculture. Some of the lakes in the Nile Delta had lots of salt which people could take to use or sell.



Pictures of life in ancient Egypt often show jewelry and beautiful objects made from gold! We think they discovered gold about 5,000 years ago.

At first, they found it in rivers, then they made mines ❼ to get more out of the ground. Archaeologists have discovered some ancient gold mines in the Eastern Desert.



Copper ❽ was another very important metal. It was easy to bend, and people used it to make tools, cooking pots, and knives, as well as jewelry. We can see a lot of these objects ❾ today in Egyptian museums.



Finally, stones and rocks were a useful natural resource in ancient Egypt, too. Because there were lots of rocks such as limestone, the ancient Egyptians could build the pyramids, and many other big and important buildings and temples. Boats on the Nile transported some of the stones across Egypt to the important cities.

❶ الزراعة
❷ الاقتصاد
❸ كان النيل يفيض
❹ خصبة
❺ الملح
❻ في الطب
❼ مناجم
❽ النحاس
❾ هذه الأشياء

Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

economy – objects – Agriculture – fertile – flooded

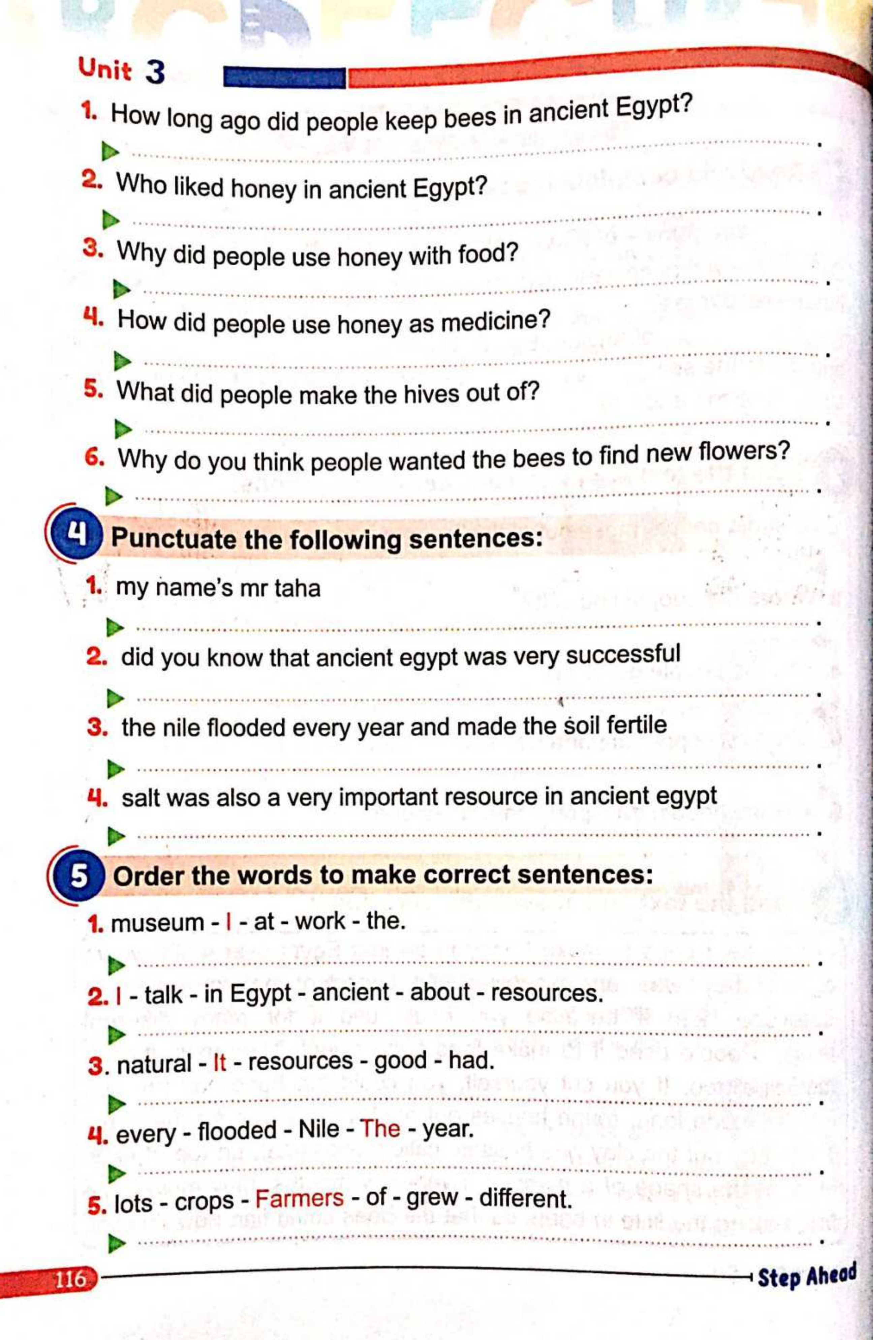
Did you know that ancient Egypt was very successful because it had good natural resources? .... was a very important part of the .... of ancient Egypt. The Nile .... every year and made the soil .... Farmers grew lots of different crops, such as cotton and rice.

2 Read the text again and answer the questions:

1. What did people make out of flax?
   ▶ ....
2. Where did people find salt?
   ▶ ....
3. How did people get gold?
   ▶ ....
4. Why was copper important?
   ▶ ....
5. How did people transport some limestone?
   ▶ ....

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

People kept bees to make honey in ancient Egypt over 4,500 years ago. Honey was an expensive but important natural resource. Everyone liked it because you could use it for many different things. People used it to make food taste sweet. They used it as a medicine, too. If you cut yourself, you could put honey on the cut. People made long, round houses out of clay (طين صلصال) for the bees. Then they put the clay bee houses, called hives (خلايا), on top of each other in the shape of a pyramid. Every few months, they moved the hives along the Nile in boats so that the bees could find new flowers.



1. How long ago did people keep bees in ancient Egypt?

▶ ....

2. Who liked honey in ancient Egypt?

▶ ....

3. Why did people use honey with food?

▶ ....

4. How did people use honey as medicine?

▶ ....

5. What did people make the hives out of?

▶ ....

6. Why do you think people wanted the bees to find new flowers?

▶ ....

4 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. my name's mr taha

▶ ....

2. did you know that ancient egypt was very successful

▶ ....

3. the nile flooded every year and made the soil fertile

▶ ....

4. salt was also a very important resource in ancient egypt

▶ ....

5 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. museum - I - at - work - the.

▶ ....

2. I - talk - in Egypt - ancient - about - resources.

▶ ....

3. natural - It - resources - good - had.

▶ ....

4. every - flooded - Nile - The - year.

▶ ....

5. lots - crops - Farmers - of - grew - different.

▶ ....

6. plant - This - blue - has - flowers - tall.

▶ ....

7. important - Egypt - in - was - ancient - Flax.

▶ ....

8. linen - clothes - used - People - make - to.

▶ ....

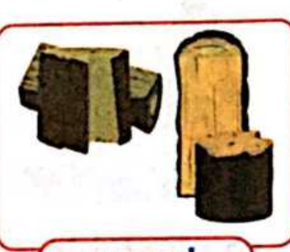
6 Write a paragraph of (55) words using the following elements:

Choose one of these natural resources from ancient Egypt. Do some research and write information about it.


dates


papyrus


reeds


wood

▶ Think of these questions:

- *How long ago did people use it/them?*
- *Who use it/them?*
- *What did they use it/them for?*
- *How or where did they find or grow it/them?*

....

....

....

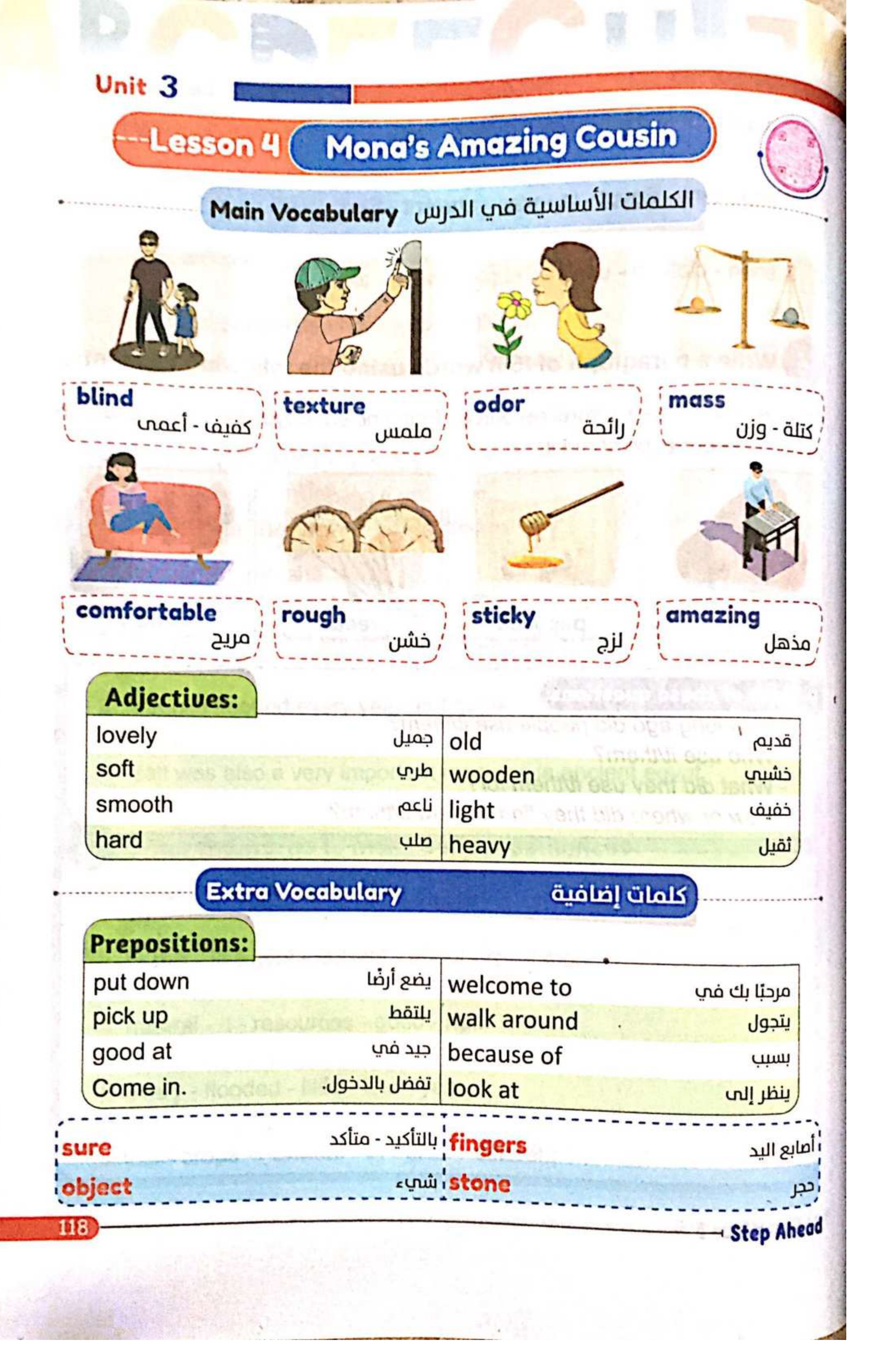
....

....

....

....

....



Lesson 4 Mona's Amazing Cousin

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس

blind كفيف - أعمى	**texture** ملمس	**odor** رائحة	**mass** كتلة - وزن
comfortable مريح	**rough** خشن	**sticky** لزج	**amazing** مذهل

Adjectives:

lovely	جميل	old	قديم
soft	طري	wooden	خشبي
smooth	ناعم	light	خفيف
hard	صلب	heavy	ثقيل

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

Prepositions:

put down	يضع أرضًا	welcome to	مرحبًا بك في
pick up	يلتقط	walk around	يتجول
good at	جيد في	because of	بسبب
Come in.	تفضل بالدخول.	look at	ينظر إلى

sure	بالتأكيد - متأكد	**fingers**	أصابع اليد
object	شيء	**stone**	حجر

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	PP
touch	يلمس	touched	touched
walk	يمشي	walked	walked
guess	يخمن	guessed	guessed
pick up	يلتقط	picked up	picked up
arrive	يصل	arrived	arrived
love	يحب	loved	loved
close	يغلق	closed	closed
describe	يصف	described	described

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	PP
run	يجري	ran	run
feel	يشعر - يحس	felt	felt



Read and learn

Mona's Amazing Cousin

1. ملمسها
2. خشن
3. رائحة

Mona is excited because her cousin Heba has just arrived from Alexandria. Heba is blind, which means she cannot see. "Hello, Heba. Come in!" says Mona. "Welcome to my house. This is the living room."
Heba walks around the room and feels some of the things. "It's a lovely room," she says. "How do you know?" asks Mona. "Well, when you run your fingers over an object, you can feel its texture ❶.
So, I know that you have soft, comfortable chairs. And I like your old wooden table. "How do you know it's old and wooden?
"The old wood is rough ❷, and it has an odor ❸, too. That means I can smell the wood."

Heba picks up a ping pong ball. "And I know this is a ball and not a stone because of its mass ❹. It's light, but a stone is heavy, "You're amazing, Heba!" says Mona. "I'd love to learn more.
"We can play a game. First, I'll ask Aunt Leila to get me some things from the kitchen. You mustn't look! Then, close your eyes. Can you tell me what the things are?"
"That sounds fun!" says Mona's mother. She puts some things down on the table.
Mona closes her eyes. First, she picks up a soft banana.
"It's not hard," says Mona. "I can bend it, and it has an odor. Is it a banana?"
"Yes!" says Heba. "Now touch this carefully."
"Oh, it's soft and smooth ❺, and it's sticky ❻. Is it honey?" asks Mona.
"That's right! You're good at this game, Mona!"
"Thanks, Heba. I know that I'll learn a lot from you while you're here!" "I'm sure I'll learn a lot from you, too!" says Heba.

❹ كتلة - وزن
❺ ناعم
❻ لزج

Exercises on Lesson 4

1 Write the descriptions from the words in the box:

a chair **an ice cream** **olive oil** **oxygen** **milk** **steam**

1. It's a solid. It's hard. It's made of wood. You can't bend it. You can sit on it. ▶ ....
2. It's a gas. It's in the air. It doesn't have a color. People need this. ▶ ....
3. It's a solid. It's soft. You eat it. It's very cold. If it gets warm, it melts. ▶ ....
4. It's a liquid. It's yellow. You can pour it onto food or you can cook with it. ▶ ....
5. It's a gas. It has no color, and it's hot. You see it when you boil water. ▶ ....
6. It's a liquid. It's white. You drink it or cook with it. You can add it to coffee. ▶ ....

2 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

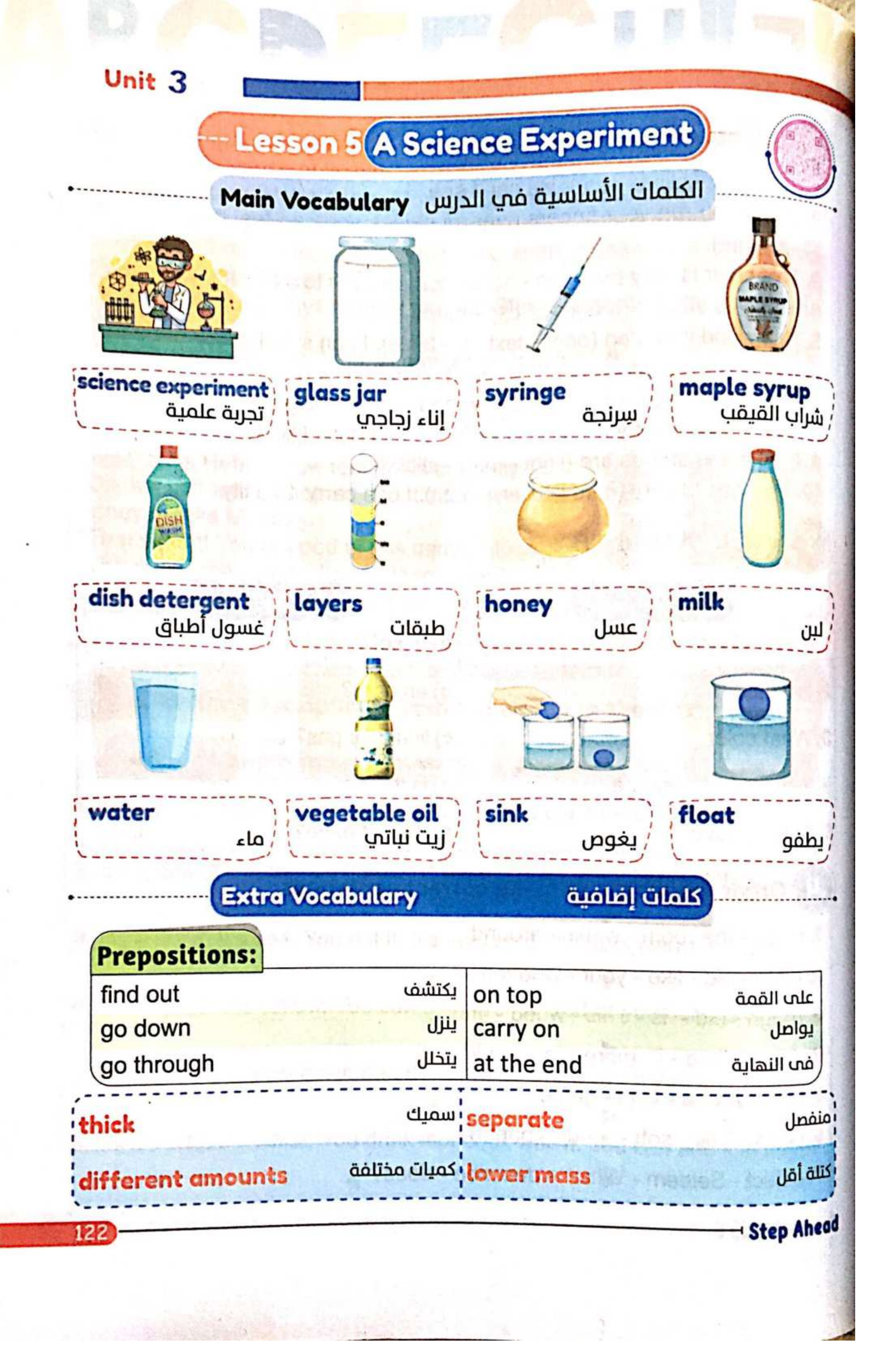
1. He's (lazy - blind - dirty). He can't see.
2. When you run your fingers over an object, you can feel its (odor - smell - texture).
3. This chair is very (wooden - hard - comfortable) to sit in. It's very nice.
4. Honey is always (rough - sticky - hard).
5. This wood has a/an (odor - texture - taste). I can smell it.
6. This box is very (heavy - light - salt). I can't carry it.
7. The (texture - mass - odor) is how heavy something is.
8. This T-shirt is very (rough - smooth - soft). I don't like it.
9. Rocks and stones are (light - hard - sticky).
10. This bag is very (hard - heavy - light). I can carry it easily.

3 match "A" with "B":

'A'	'B'
1. Is your object a solid,	a) or soft?
2. Is it hard	b) an odor?
3. What color	c) liquid, or gas?
4. What kind of texture	d) is it?
5. Does it have	e) does it have?

4 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. Heba - the room - walks - around. ▶ ....
2. table - old - like - your - wooden - I. ▶ ....
3. rough - old - is - This - wood - and. ▶ ....
4. learn - love - I - more - to - would. ▶ ....
5. play - we - a - Can - game? ▶ ....
6. picks - She - soft - a - up - banana. ▶ ....
7. object - Seleem - Which - describe - does? ▶ ....



Lesson 5 A Science Experiment

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس

science experiment تجربة علمية	glass jar إناء زجاجي	syringe سِرنجة	maple syrup شراب القيقب
dish detergent غسول أطباق	layers طبقات	honey عسل	milk لبن
water ماء	vegetable oil زيت نباتي	sink يغوص	float يطفو

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

Prepositions:

find out	يكتشف	on top	على القمة
go down	ينزل	carry on	يواصل
go through	يتخلل	at the end	فى النهاية

thick	سميك	separate	منفصل
different amounts	كميات مختلفة	lower mass	كتلة أقل

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

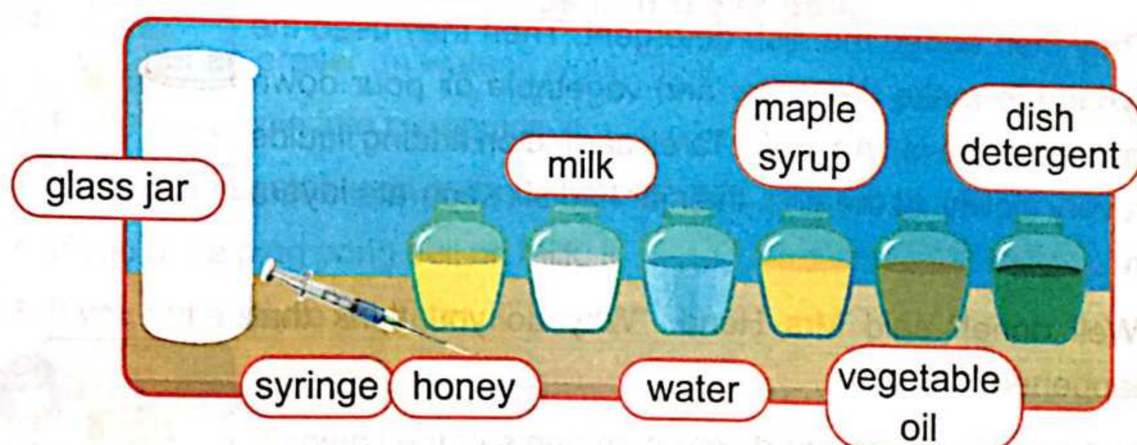
Present		Past	PP
float	يطفو	floated	floated
mix	يخلط - يمزج	mixed	mixed
carry on	يستمر - يواصل	carried on	carried on
notice	يلاحظ	noticed	noticed

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	PP
sink	يغطس	sank	sunk
let	يسمح - يدع	let	let
show	يعرض	showed	shown
think	يفكر - يعتقد	thought	thought

Read and learn

A Science Experiment



"Today we're going to do a science experiment!" said Mrs Hend. "What happens when we pour different liquids into one container?"" I think they mix together," said Amir. "Let's find out!" said Mrs Hend. Mrs Hend had some small jars with these liquids: honey, milk, water, maple syrup, vegetable oil, and dish detergent. She also had some tall glass jars and

a plastic syringe. She gave these out to groups of children. Then she showed them what to do.

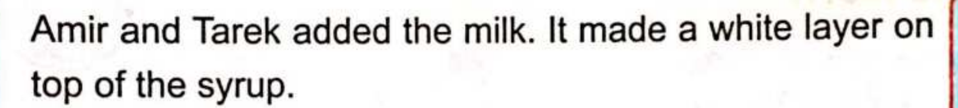
"First, slowly pour in the honey. Don't let it touch the side of the jar."

Amir and Tarek poured the honey in. It was sticky and thick.

"Next, slowly pour in the maple syrup."

Amir and Tarek noticed that the maple syrup wasn't as thick as the honey. When they poured it, the syrup made a **layer** on top of the honey "Look!" said Tarek.

"It didn't mix with the honey. It's on top." "Use the syringe to put your milk slowly on top of the syrup, in the center. Then do the same with the dish detergent," said Mrs Hend.



Amir and Tarek added the milk. It made a white layer on top of the syrup.

They then added the dish detergent. Then they used the syringe to make the water and vegetable oil pour down the side of the jar. Amir and Tarek carried on adding liquids in very slowly. At the end, their jar had six separate layers in.

"Well done!" said Mrs Hend. "Why do you think that happened?"



"Is it because there are different amounts of the liquids?" asked Amir.

"No, Amir. We had the same amount, but the liquids all have a different mass. The heavier liquids **sink** to the bottom. The liquids with a lower mass float on top!"

Exercises on Lesson 5

1 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

liquids - container - mass - experiment - amount

Mrs Hend : Today we're going to do a science ....!What happens when we pour different liquids into one ....?

Amir : I think they mix together.

Mrs Hend : Let's find out! I can put honey, milk, water, maple syrup, vegetable oil, and dish detergent together in a tall glass jar.

Amir : Oh, no! The ....don't mix together.

Mrs Hend : Why do you think that happened?

Amir : Is it because there are different amounts of the liquids?

Mrs Hend : No, Amir. We had the same amount, but the liquids all have a different .... The heavier liquids sink to the bottom. The liquids with a lower mass float on top!

2 Complete the sentences as in the example:

1. If you put an eraser on water,it would float.
2. If you put a coin into the liquids, it ....
3. If you put vegetable oil on fruit juice, the oil ....
4. If you put a ping pong ball on milk, it ....
5. If you put a stone on water, it ....

3 Choose the correct word:

1. We do science (maps – experiments – problems) in the science lab.
2. Mom usually put some vegetable (honey – oil – detergent) in our food.
3. (Honey – Milk – water) is sticky and sweet.
4. If you put a stone in water, it would (fly – float – sink).

5. He uses a (syringe – pan – jar) to take his medicine.

6. Mom washes plates and dishes with a dish (syrup – detergent – vegetable oil)

7. If you put a plastic bag in water, it would (float – sink – fly).

8. This medicine is (tablets – syrup – food). You can drink it.

4 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. experiment – are – do – a science – We – going to.

▶ ....

2. jars – glass – some – She – had – tall.

▶ ....

3. what – do – She – showed – to – them.

▶ ....

4. It – mix – honey – didn't – the – with.

▶ ....

5. the – dish – added – They – detergent.

▶ ....

6. lower – float – with – a – mass – The liquids.

▶ ....

5 Read the experiment again and choose the correct answer:

1. Which object sinks through all the liquids to the bottom?

a) a ping pong ball **b)** a coin

2. Why does it go to the bottom?

a) It has the most mass. **b)** It has the least mass.

3. Which object floats on the vegetable oil?

a) a ping pong ball **b)** a coin

4. Why does it float?

a) It has the most mass. **b)** It has the least mass.



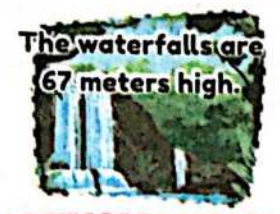
Lesson 6 Writing a report



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



report (n) تقرير



fact حقيقة



oasis واحة



tunnel نفق



flamingo طائر الفلامنجو



have fun يستمتع

Prepositions:

go on a trip	يذهب في رحلة	at the top	في القمة
It's time to	حان الوقت لـ	at the bottom	في القاع

Conjugation of Verbs

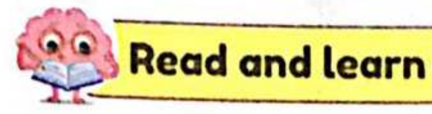
Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	PP
help	يساعد	helped	helped
travel	يسافر	traveled	traveled
jump	يقفز	jumped	jumped
enjoy	يستمتع بـ	enjoyed	enjoyed



Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	PP
hear	يسمع	heard	heard
swim	يسبح	swam	swum
fall	يسقط - يقع	fell	fallen



Read and learn



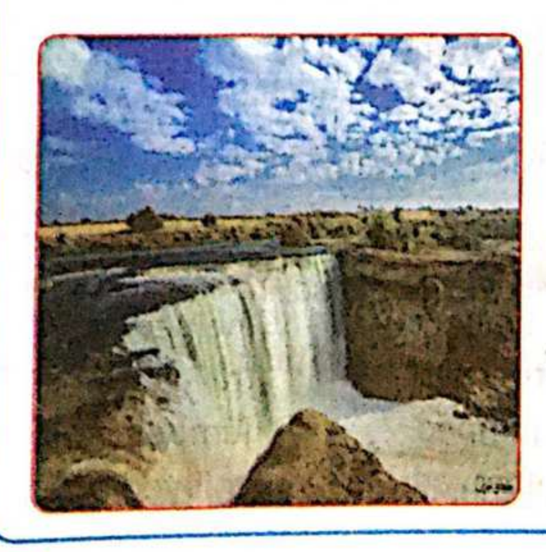
Wadi El Rayan Waterfalls

A report by Wael Mahdi

Last week, our class went on a trip to the waterfalls at Wadi El Rayan. It was beautiful! There are two lakes there: one at the top of the waterfalls and one at the bottom. The waterfalls are 67 meters high, so the sound of water falling is very loud. We couldn't hear our teacher talking very well! We learned that the water comes from an oasis in the desert. An oasis is a place in the desert with water. The water travels eight kilometers from the oasis to the lake through a tunnel.

Our teacher also told us that there are a lot of different birds living there. We saw some of the birds and my favorite was the flamingo.

Then it was time to have some fun! We jumped into the bottom lake and went swimming. It is safe to swim there, and it helped us cool down after a long day.





Exercises on Lesson 6

1 Match the questions with the answers:

'A'	'B'
1. When did Wael visit the waterfalls at Wadi El Rayan?	a) It comes from an oasis in the desert.
2. How many lakes are there at Wadi El Rayan?	b) Flamingoes.
3. Where does the water come from?	c) Last week.
4. How does the water travel to the waterfalls?	d) In the bottom lake.
5. What kind of birds live around the waterfalls?	e) Through a tunnel.
6. Where did Wael and his class go swimming?	f) Two.

2 Read the report again and answer the questions:

1. How high are the waterfalls?
   ▶ ....
2. How far does the water travel through a tunnel?
   ▶ ....?
3. What is an oasis?
   ▶ ....
4. Which bird is Wael's favorite?
   ▶ ....
5. What did the class do to have fun on this trip?
   ▶ ....



3 Read the text then choose the correct answer:

Damietta — A report by Gameela Hassan

Damietta is a city on the Mediterranean coast of Egypt. It has a long beautiful coastline and many people like to go there on vacation. Ras El-Bar Island is one of the most popular places to stay there. There are also many beautiful gardens and orchards (بساتين) to see. Orchards are places where fruit trees are grown. Damietta is also a busy port and an important fishing center. It has the largest number of fishing boats in Egypt. It is an important place for agriculture, too. Agriculture is the practice of farming. Crops such as rice, fruit, cotton, and date palm trees are grown here for the Egyptian people and also to sell to other countries. Damietta is a busy city with a famous history but it is also a beautiful, modern city. I'd really like to visit Damietta one day.

Choose the correct answer:

1. Damietta is a city on ....
   a. the Mediterranean coast　　b. the Red Sea
2. It has the largest number of .... in Egypt.
   a. fishing boats　　b. modern buildings
3. It is an important place for agriculture, which is the practice of ....
   a. fishing　　b. farming
4. Crops which are grown there include ....
   a. tea and coffee.　　b. rice and fruit
5. Gameela would like to .... Damietta.
   a. visit　　b. live in

4 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. have fun - do - What - to - did - they?
   ▶ .... ?
2. waterfalls - meters - are - 67 - high - The.
   ▶ ....
3. a place - An oasis - desert - the - in - is.
   ▶ ....

4. We - some - birds - of - saw - the.

▶ ....

5. bird - flamingo - My favorite - was - the.

▶ ....

6. bottom - We - into - lake - jumped - the.

▶ ....

7. waterfalls - How - are - the - high?

▶ .... ?

8. bird - Wael's - Which - favorite - is?

▶ .... ?

9. safe - swim - It - to - there - is.

▶ ....

10. us - down - helped - cool - It.

▶ ....

5 Do research and make notes:

You are going to write a report about a place you have visited. Do research and make notes to answer the questions:

1. Where is this place?

▶ ....

2. What did you do there?

▶ ....

3. What things, people, or animals did you see there?

▶ ....

4. Why did you enjoy your visit?

▶ ....

Tip!

Think about how you can answer these questions to include facts, details, and definitions in your report. This makes your report more interesting and helps the reader learn more about the place. Your research will give you facts to include in your report. You can write definitions of things to help readers understand.

Lesson 7 language



Prepositions:

work in groups	يعمل في مجموعات	in front of	أمام
take out	يُخرج	turn around	يدور
on her own	بمفردها	have to	يجب - يلزم

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	PP
start	يبدأ	started	started
watch	يشاهد	watched	watched
borrow	يستعير	borrowed	borrowed

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	PP
sit	يجلس	sat	sat
speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken

Read and learn

"OK, students," said Mrs Hend. "Today we're going to do a science experiment. You can work in groups of three. There is a solid object in one box, and a container of liquid in another box. You have to study them and answer some questions."



Lara was sitting on her own, but Reem and Dina were sitting in front of her. Reem turned around and spoke to Lara.

"Lara, Mrs Hend said we could work in groups of three. Would you like to work with us?"

"Oh, yes please," said Lara, happily.

The girls sat together, and they took out their pens and notebooks.

"OK," said Dina, "what do we need to do?"

Lara looked at her notes. "Mrs Hend said there was a solid object in one box and a container of liquid in another box.

"That's right," said Reem. "She said we had to study them and answer some questions."
"Great, let's get started!" said Dina.

Tip!

- When you write a person says, we use speech marks to show the direct speech: "Let's go to the mall," said Dad.

Grammar Study

Reported speech (statements)
تحويل الجملة الخبرية إلى الغير مباشر

- We use reported speech when we tell someone what another person said.

The steps:

- خطوات تحويل الجملة من مباشر إلى غير مباشر:

1) We use a reporting verb (said – told).

1) (said to) تحول إلى (told) بينما (said) فقط تبقى كما هي.

2) We omit the quotation marks and the comma and we can use the word "that" as a conjunction.

2) نحذف ال (, - " ") ونربط بـ (that) ويجوز الاستغناء عنها.

3) We change pronouns and possessive adjectives according to the meaning.

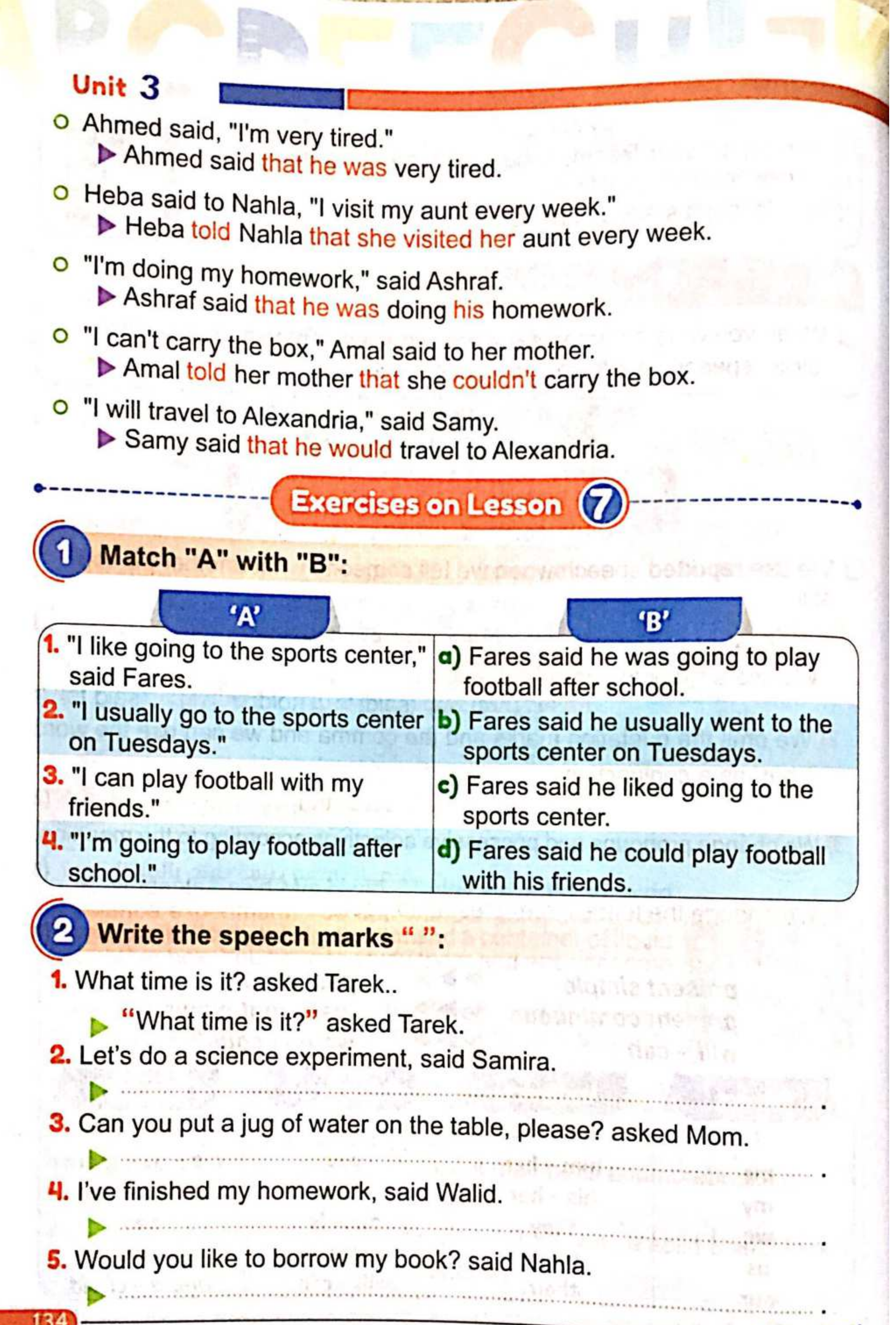
3) تحول الضمائر على حسب معنى الجملة.

4) We change the tenses from present to past.

4) تحول زمن الجملة من المضارع إلى الماضي.

present simple	▶▶▶	*past simple*
present continuous	▶▶▶	*past continuous*
will – can	▶▶▶	*would - could*

Direct	Indirect	Direct	Indirect
I	he – she	you	I – we – they
me	him – her	you	me – us – them
my	his – her	your	my – our – their
we	they	am – is	was
us	them	are	were
our	their	will – can	would – could



- Ahmed said, "I'm very tired."
  - ▶ Ahmed said that he was very tired.
- Heba said to Nahla, "I visit my aunt every week."
  - ▶ Heba told Nahla that she visited her aunt every week.
- "I'm doing my homework," said Ashraf.
  - ▶ Ashraf said that he was doing his homework.
- "I can't carry the box," Amal said to her mother.
  - ▶ Amal told her mother that she couldn't carry the box.
- "I will travel to Alexandria," said Samy.
  - ▶ Samy said that he would travel to Alexandria.

Exercises on Lesson 7

1 Match "A" with "B":

'A'	'B'
1. "I like going to the sports center," said Fares.	a) Fares said he was going to play football after school.
2. "I usually go to the sports center on Tuesdays."	b) Fares said he usually went to the sports center on Tuesdays.
3. "I can play football with my friends."	c) Fares said he liked going to the sports center.
4. "I'm going to play football after school."	d) Fares said he could play football with his friends.

2 Write the speech marks " ":

1. What time is it? asked Tarek..
   ▶ "What time is it?" asked Tarek.
2. Let's do a science experiment, said Samira.
   ▶ ....
3. Can you put a jug of water on the table, please? asked Mom.
   ▶ ....
4. I've finished my homework, said Walid.
   ▶ ....
5. Would you like to borrow my book? said Nahla.
   ▶ ....

6. We're going to the park, said Malek.
▶ ....

3 Choose the correct word(s) in brackets:

1. Omar said he (like – liked) reading comics.
2. Yasmine said she usually (had – have) fruit for breakfast.
3. Amir said Salma (could – can) play the piano.
4. Mohamed said he (will – would) walk to school.
5. Wael said he (is going to – was going to) play football.
6. Mom said it (is – was) cold and rainy.

4 Complete the sentence in direct speech:

1. Maged said Yasser could ride a bike.
▶ "Yasser ......can...... ride a bike," said Maged.
2. Mom said Dina loved animals.
▶ "Dina .... animals," said Mom.
3. Heba said she was going to watch television.
▶ "I .... going to watch television," said Heba.
4. Asser said he would be late for football practice.
▶ "I .... be late for football practice." said Asser.
5. Nadine said she couldn't play the piano.
▶ "I .... play the piano," said Nadine.
6. Injy said she liked drawing and painting.
▶ "I.................................. drawing and painting," said Injy.

5 Complete the sentences in reported speech:

1. "I go to the library on Mondays," said Amira.
▶ Amira said she .... to the library on Mondays.
2. "I can play the guitar," said Magdy.
▶ Magdy said he .... play the guitar.
3. "I'm going to do my homework," said Lara.
▶ Lara said she .... going to do her homework.
4. "I often watch funny movies," said Tarek.
▶ Tarek said he often .... funny movies.

6 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. are – a science – We – do – going to – experiment.
▶ ....
2. work – three – in groups – can – of – You.
▶ ....
3. Lara – sitting – was – own – her – on.
▶ ....
4. you – work – us – Would – like – with – to?
▶ ....
5. pens – notebooks – took out – their – They – and.
▶ ....
6. need – do – What – we – do – to?
▶ ....
7. Lara – at – looked – note – her.
▶ ....

7 Rewrite the sentences in reported speech:

1. "Dad is going to take Sayed to school," said Hossam.
▶ ....
2. "I like cooking with Mom," said Eman.
▶ ....
3. "I'll carry the shopping," said Sameh.
▶ ....
4. "Amany can speak English well," said Nashwa.
▶ ....
5. "Zahra is going to visit her cousins in Port Said," said Maggie.
▶ ....
6. "Mr Hassan works in Alexandria," said Shady.
▶ ....

Unit 3 Test 3

Total
30



1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (4Ms)

Last week, our class went on a trip to the waterfalls at Wadi El Rayan. It was beautiful! There are two lakes there: one at the top of the waterfalls and one at the bottom. The waterfalls are 67 meters high. The water comes from an oasis in the desert. An oasis is a place in the desert with water.

1. Last (year – week – month – day), our class went on a trip to the waterfalls at Wadi El Rayan.
2. There are two (rivers – ponds – seas – lakes) there.
3. The waterfalls are 67 (sixty seven – seventy six – sixty six – seventy seven) meters high.
4. A/An (lake – island – oasis – mountain) is a place in the desert with water.



2 Listen and complete: (4Ms)

Pictures of life in ancient Egypt often show jewelry and beautiful objects made from gold! We think they discovered gold about 5,000 years ago. At first, they found it in rivers, then they made mines to get more out of the ground. Archaeologists have discovered some ancient gold mines in the Eastern Desert.

1. .... of life in ancient Egypt often show jewelry and beautiful objects.
2. We think ancient Egyptians .... gold about 5,000 years ago.
3. At first, they found it in rivers, then they made .... to get more.
4. .... have discovered some ancient gold mines in the Eastern Desert.

ملحوظة هامة: عند إجابة سؤال الاستماع يجب على الطفل قراءة الأسئلة جميعها جيدًا قبل الاستماع ثم يقوم بالإجابة أثناء سماع النص.

يقوم المُعلم أو ولي الأمر بمسح الكود الموجود للاستماع إلى نص الاستماع أو يقوم المُعلم أو ولي الأمر بالجلوس مقابل الطفل وقراءة النص له ويقوم الطفل بالإجابة أثناء الاستماع.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4Ms)

countries – Salt – agriculture – economy – resource

.... was also a very important .... in ancient Egypt, and they sold it to other ...., too. People used salt to keep food fresh. It was also useful in medicine and .... Some of the lakes in the Nile Delta had lots of salt which people could take to use or sell.

4 Read the following text and then answer the questions below: (4Ms)

Faten went to the Egyptian Museum last week. Twenty students and two teachers went with her. The school bus took half an hour to get **there**. They saw lots of ancient monuments. They saw valuable treasures and statues. They spent three hours in the museum. Then they went to a park near the River Nile where they played, ate and enjoyed themselves. They went home at four o'clock. It was a fantastic day.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. They went to the park (after – before – at the same time) they went to the museum.
2. The underlined word "there" refers to the (bus – Egyptian Museum – park).

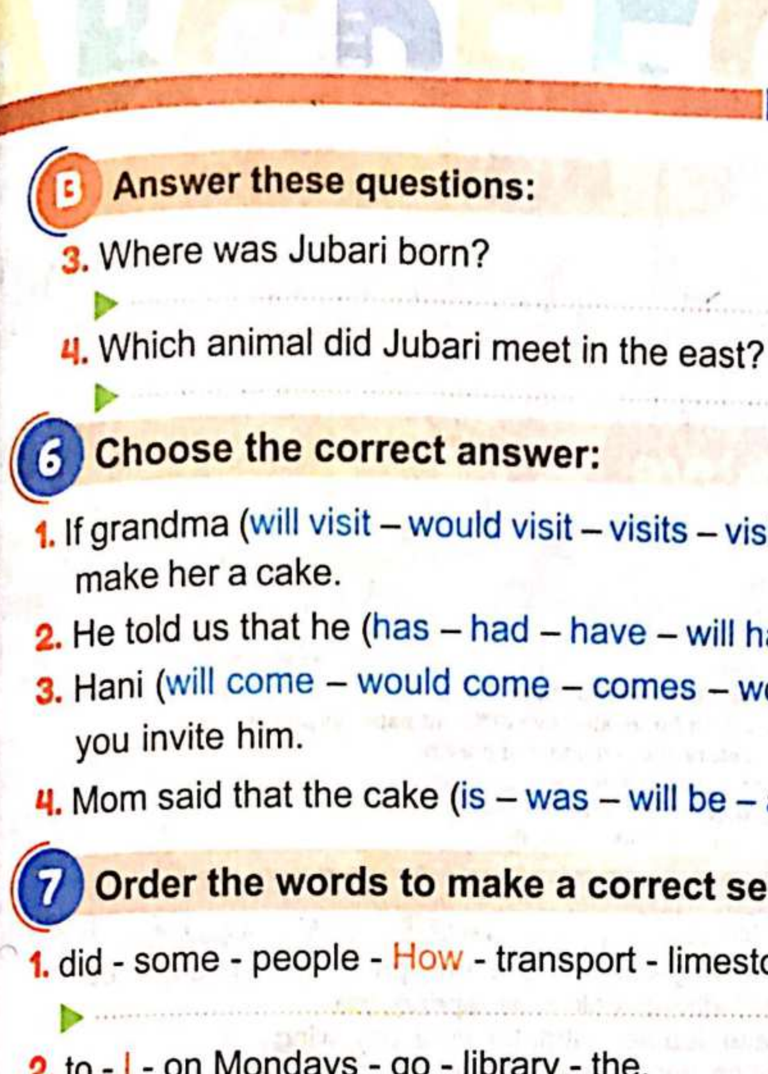
B Answer these questions:

3. How many people went to the Egyptian Museum?
   ▶ ....
4. What did they do at the park?
   ▶ ....

The Reader

5 A- Read and write T (True) or F (False): (4Ms)

1. Wadi el Gemal is a terrible place for gazelles. (   )
2. Gazelles can run quickly on the sand. (   )



B Answer these questions:

3. Where was Jubari born?

▶ ....

4. Which animal did Jubari meet in the east?

▶ ....

6 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. If grandma (will visit – would visit – visits – visited) us on Friday, we would make her a cake.
2. He told us that he (has – had – have – will have) three pets.
3. Hani (will come – would come – comes – wouldn't come) to the party if you invite him.
4. Mom said that the cake (is – was – will be – are) ready.

7 Order the words to make a correct sentence: (2Ms)

1. did - some - people - How - transport - limestone?

▶ .... ?

2. to - I - on Mondays - go - library - the.

▶ ....

8 Write a text of (55) words using the following guiding elements: (4Ms)

Words to help you: cotton – important – crop – grows – hot countries – Egyptian cotton – good quality – sell – countries – make – cloth – cotton clothes



....

....

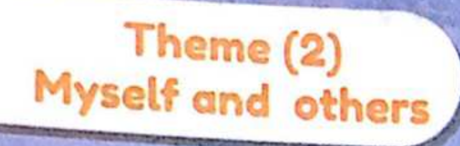
....

....

....

....

....





We're on the move

نحن في طريقنا



- explore how bikes move.
- identify, understand, and use question tags.
- read and follow instruction for making two different paper airplanes.
- read a science-fiction story about flying and gravity.
- understand blogs about jobs in science.
- write an email using sequencing words.
- understand a story about the first man to fly.

Objectives

Vocabulary	Forces when riding a bike: brake, pull, push, ride, speed, wheel Other forces: friction, hook, rope, spring, tire Stories: crease, feather, land, tip, vertically, wing Jobs in science and related words: astronaut, engineer, pilot, planet, skateboard
Language	- They like museums, don't they? - This bird can fly, can't it? - He'll call you tomorrow, won't he?
Reading	A story about a boy learning to ride a bike; instructions for how to make paper airplanes; a story about flying shoes; a story about the first man to fly
Writing	Sequencing words; writing an email to a friend about a job; an email to a friend about an imaginary meeting
Speaking	Saying how you use forces at home or at school; guessing the results of an experiment; talking about gravity and why things can fly; discussing jobs and how to get them; talking about inventions
Listening	A visit to a science museum
Life skills	**Creativity and participation:** making paper airplanes **Decision making and communication:** predicting the results of an experiment
Values	**Appreciation of science - Curiosity**
Issues and challenges	**- Citizenship**
Integrated cross-curriculum topics	**Science:** motion and types of force

Lesson 1 My new bike



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



bike دراجة



pedal دواسة



brakes فرامل



wheel عجلة



speed سرعة



increase يزيد



push force قوة الدفع



pull force قوة السحب



by pushing بالدفع



ride يركب



cycle يركب دراجة



cycling ركوب الدراجات

Prepositions:

slow down	يبطئ - يهدي	go up	يصعد
good at	جيد فى	go down	ينزل

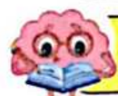
Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	PP
slow down	يبطئ	slowed down	slowed down
push	يدفع	pushed	pushed
pull	يسحب	pulled	pulled
remember	يتذكر	remembered	remembered
open	يفتح	opened	opened
move	يتحرك	moved	moved
cycle	يركب دراجة	cycled	cycled
increase	يزيد	increased	increased
close	يغلق	closed	closed
stop	يتوقف	stopped	stopped

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	PP
read	يقرأ	read	read
stand	يقف	stood	stood
think	يفكر - يعتقد	thought	thought
go	يذهب	went	gone
fall	يسقط - يقع	fell	fallen
see	يرى	saw	seen
know	يعرف	knew	known
ride	يركب	rode	ridden
teach	يُعلم - يدرس	taught	taught



Read and learn

My New Bike

Mazen: Nabil, have you seen my new bike? I got it last week from my grandparents.

Nabil: It's great! Shall I get my bike and we can cycle together?

Mazen: Well, I haven't ridden a bike before. I don't know how. My parents want me to learn.

Nabil : I can teach you. It's easy. It's all about the forces which we learned about in our science lesson yesterday.

Mazen: What do you mean?

Nabil : You use force to get the bike to move by pushing ❶ the pedals ❷. You also use force to stop the brake bike, by using the brakes❸. That slows down or stops the wheels ❹. If you want to increase your speed ❺, push the pedals more quickly.

bike
pedal
brake
wheel

Mazen: I see. I should be good at cycling then, as I'm top of the class ❻ in science! Here I go!

Nabil : Good. You'll need to cycle harder when you go up that hill.

Mazen: Do you mean use more push force ❼?

Nabil : Yes, but remember, when you go down the hill, the bike is going to go faster, so you'll need to use the brakes.

Mazen: I did it! That was great!

Nabil : Be careful ❽! You're now cycling too slowly. You need to go faster or the bike will fall over ... Oh, dear, are you OK?

Mazen: I fell, but I'm fine.

Nabil : I'll help you stand up.

Mazen: Thanks! That's an example of a pull force ❾, isn't it? I think I'm better at science than riding a bike!

❶ بالدفع
❷ دواسات
❸ الفرامل
❹ العجل
❺ سرعتك
❻ الأول على الفصل
❼ قوة الدفع
❽ احترس
❾ قوة الجذب

Did you know? هل تعلم؟

The fastest roller coaster in the world is the Formula Rossa. It can move from 0 to 240 kilometers an hour in 4.9 seconds. You can ride it in Abu Dhabi.

أسرع قطار ملاهي في العالم هو الفورمولا روسا. يمكنه التحرك من صفر حتى 240 كيلومتر فى الساعة في 4.9 ثانية. يمكنك ركوبة فى أبو ظبي.



Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Choose the correct word:

When Mazen is riding his bike, he uses a 1 (pull – push) force to move the pedals. When he wants to 2 (start – stop) the bike, he uses the brakes. The brakes slow down or stop the 3 (wheels – pedals). If Mazen wants to increases his 4 (speed – brakes), he must push more quickly. Then he will go faster. When he goes up a hill, he uses more 5 (push – pull) force. When he goes down the hill, the bike will go 6 (slower – faster). So he must use the brakes. If Mazen cycles too slowly, the bike will 7 (fall over – stand up). If Mazen falls over, Nabil will use a 8 (push – pull) force to help him stand up.

2 Read the text again and write T (True) or F (False):

1. Mazen rode his bike for the first time last week. T / F
2. Nabil can ride a bike. T / F
3. Mazen cycles quickly up and down a hill. T / F
4. Mazen fell because the bike went too fast. T / F
5. Nabil used a pull force to help Mazen stand up. T / F

3 Read and match "A" with "B":

'A'	'B'
1. When you push the pedals,	a) the bike will fall over.
2. If you want to stop the bike,	b) it slows or stops the bike.
3. If you want to increase your speed,	c) the bike moves.
4. When you go faster down a hill,	d) push the pedals more quickly.
5. If you cycle too slowly,	e) use the brakes.

4 Read the text again and choose the correct answer:

1. You close a laptop. This is an example of ....

   a) speed b) a push force

2. You open the door to get into a car. This is an example of ....

   a) a push force b) a pull force

3. A car goes too fast down a hill. You need to use ....

   a) the brakes b) the pedals

4. The car goes at 60 km/h. This is the car's ....

   a) force b) speed

5 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. seen – bike – Have – my – you?

   ▶ ....

2. bike – a – haven't – before – I – ridden.

   ▶ ....

3. should – good – cycling – I – be – at.

   ▶ ....

4. need – harder – cycle – will – You – to.

   ▶ ....

5. good – I – a bike – am – at – riding.

   ▶ ....

6. You – go – to – need – faster.

   ▶ ....

Lesson 2 My new bike

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



English	Arabic
friction	احتكاك
spring	سوستة
tire	إطار
rope	حبل
hook	صنارة - خُطاف
space	فضاء
path	ممر
tension	شد
air resistance	مقاومة الهواء
gravity	الجاذبية

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	PP
press	يضغط	pressed	pressed
order	يطلب - يرتب	ordered	ordered
call	يتصل - يسمى	called	called

Present		Past	PP
rain	تمطر	rained	rained
check	يفحص	checked	checked
confirm	يؤكد	confirmed	confirmed
complete	يكمل	completed	completed
move	ينقل	moved	moved
worry	يقلق	worried	worried

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	PP
put	يضع	put	put
make	يصنع	made	made
hear	يسمع	heard	heard
keep	يحفظ - يحافظ	kept	kept
fly	يطير	flew	flown
speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken

Grammar Study



Question Tag السؤال المزيل

- It's a short question put at the end of a statement. We use it to confirm our opinion.

☆ هو سؤال مختصر في آخر الجملة الخبرية عبارة عن فعل مساعد وضمير فاعل فقط ودائمًا يعطي معنى «أليس كذلك».

1. We make question tags with an auxiliary verb and a pronoun.

1. يتكون السؤال المزيل من فعل مساعد وضمير فاعل فقط.

2. When the sentence is affirmative, we use a negative question tag and when the sentence is negative, we use an affirmative question tag.

2. إذا كانت الجملة مثبتة يكون السؤال المزيل منفي والعكس.

3. We use the same subject pronoun and the same auxiliary verb in the sentence. If the subject is a noun, we use a pronoun instead.

3. نستخدم الفعل المساعد الموجود في الجملة ونستخدم نفس الفاعل إذا كان ضميراً أما إذا كان الفاعل اسم ، نستخدم الضمير الذي يحل محله .

4. We use (do – does) if the verb in present simple or (did) if it's in the past simple.

4. إذا كانت الجملة في زمن المضارع البسيط نستخدم (do - does)، أما إذا كانت في الماضي البسيط نستخدم الفعل المساعد (did).

5. In the negative form, we always use the short form (n't):

(isn't – can't – don't ……………)

5. في حالة النفي ، دائماً نستخدم الصيغة المختصرة (n't) (isn't – can't – don't……….).

- Amira is very clever, isn't she?
- You haven't cooked the food yet, have you?
- He was tired last night, wasn't he?
- I will pass my exams, won't I?
- Mona likes chocolate, doesn't she?
- Ahmed and his friends play football on Friday, don't they?
- Amgad phoned me yesterday, didn't he?
- You can't help me, can you?
- We have dinner at four, don't we?
- Jana has two blue dresses, doesn't she?
- He had his sandwiches with his friends, didn't he?

Exercises on Lesson 2



1 Complete the sentences with words from the box:

friction – pull – slowly – smaller – space

1. You can fall on ice because there is less ……………… than on the path.
2. Tension is a ……………… force.
3. Air resistance makes an object move more ……………… .
4. When you press on a spring, it gets ……………… .
5. Gravity keeps people from flying up into ……………… .

2 Read and match:

'A'	'B'
1. You live in Egypt,	a) didn't he?
2. Waleed played football yesterday,	b) can it?
3. You will be in sixth grade next year,	c) don't you?
4. A camel can't fly,	d) won't you?

3 Complete the sentences with the words in the box:

Air resistance - Friction - Gravity - Spring force - tension

1. .... between the bike tires and the road stops you from falling.
2. When you hang a bag on a hook, the bag creates a pull force called ....
3. .... works against an object as it moves through the air.
4. .... happens when you press a spring and it gets smaller. The spring returns to its normal size when you take your finger off.
5. .... is a force that pulls objects toward the Earth.

4 Complete the sentences with the words in the box:

can't - does - did - isn't - will - won't

1. Khalid's sister is 12 years old, ... she?
2. Mr Hassan doesn't drive, ... he?
3. I'll be in your class next year, ... I?
4. Rania can play the guitar, ... she?
5. We won't be late, ... we?
6. Eman didn't go to the park, ... she?

5 Choose the correct word in brackets:

1. She has cooked the food, (hasn't – doesn't – isn't) she?
2. He is good at math, (hasn't – doesn't – isn't) he?

3. You can carry this box, (can – could – can't) you?
4. They haven't finished their homework yet, (don't – have – haven't) they?
5. He wasn't at home last night, (was – is – does) he?
6. They always play football on Friday, (don't – haven't – aren't) they?
7. I'll phone you tonight, (won't – can't – wouldn't) I?
8. Maha likes sweets, (hasn't – doesn't – isn't) she?
9. They watched the match yesterday, (hadn't – didn't – weren't) they?
10. Ali (is – was – has) ill, wasn't he?
11. Heba won't visit us tomorrow, (will – can – would) she?
12. Adel likes volleyball, doesn't (Adel – him – he)?
13. I (get – gets – got) up late, didn't I?
14. Manar (looked – looks – look) very angry, doesn't she?
15. Sahar bought a new dress, didn't (Sahar – her – she)?

6 Write the question tags to the following sentences:

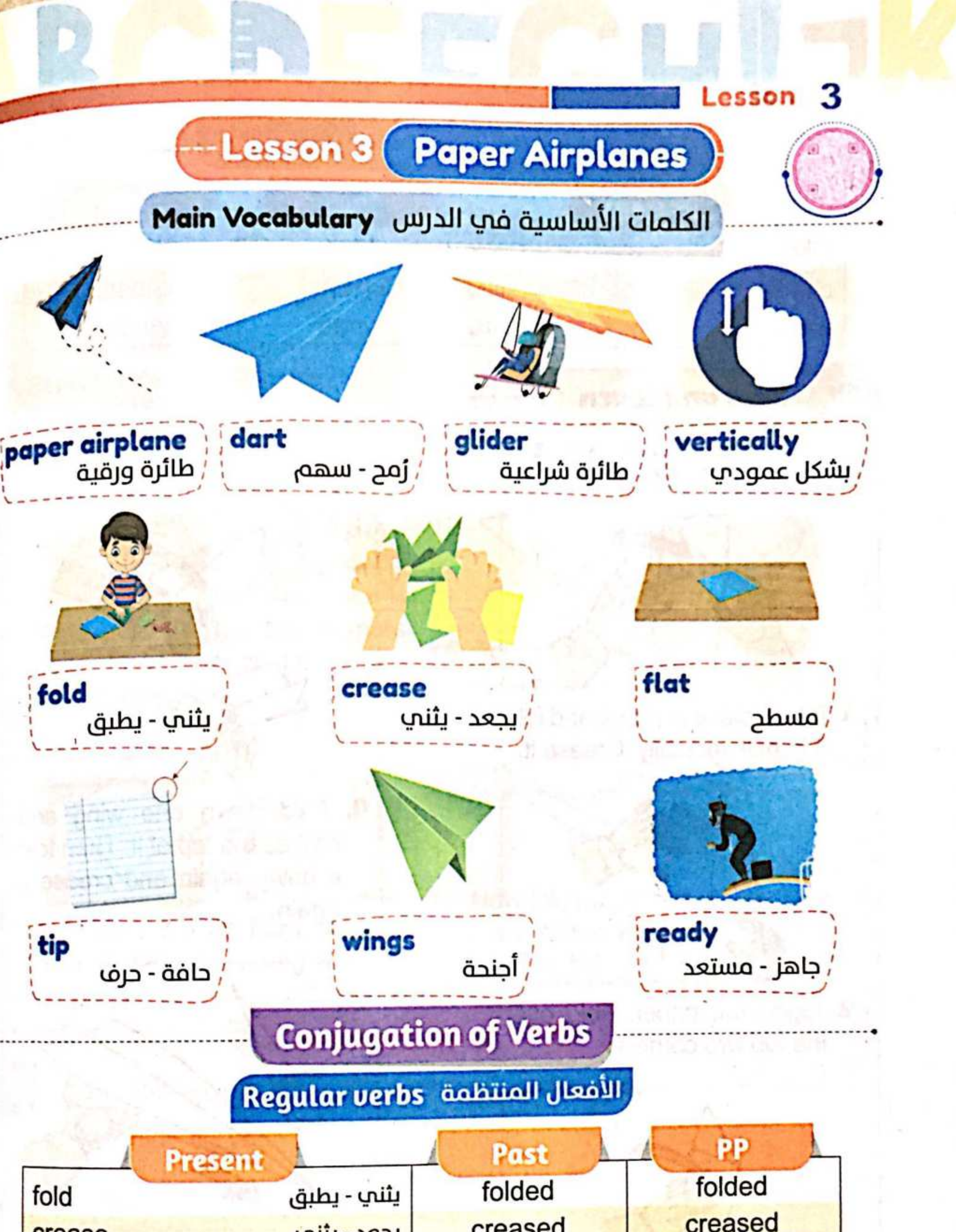
1. She didn't have chicken for breakfast, ...?
2. It won't rain tomorrow, ...?
3. Your mom doesn't speak French, ...?
4. The students can't go home early today, ...?

7 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets:

1. There .... (not be) any coffee in the cupboard, is there?
2. She .... (not tell) me her name, did she?
3. You .... (send) Grandpa an email, won't you?
4. We .... (can make) dinner tonight, can't we?
5. It .... (not be) hot tomorrow, will it?
6. Hamdi and his family .... (travel) by boat, didn't they?

Lesson 3 Paper Airplanes

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



- **paper airplane** طائرة ورقية
- **dart** رُمح - سهم
- **glider** طائرة شراعية
- **vertically** بشكل عمودي
- **fold** يثني - يطبق
- **crease** يجعد - يثني
- **flat** مسطح
- **tip** حافة - حرف
- **wings** أجنحة
- **ready** جاهز - مستعد

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	PP
fold	يثني - يطبق	folded	folded
crease	يجعد - يثني	creased	creased
turn over	يقلب	turned over	turned over
repeat	يكرر	repeated	repeated
stay	يبقى - يمكث	stayed	stayed
discuss	يناقش	discussed	discussed

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

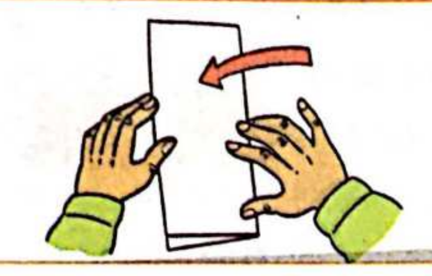
Present		Past	PP
take	يأخذ	took	taken
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
write	يكتب	wrote	written



Read and learn



The Dart الزمح - السهم



1. Take a piece of paper and fold it in half vertically. Crease it.



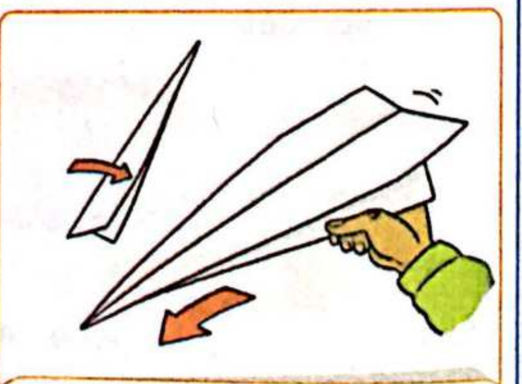
2. Open the paper. Fold over the top two corners.



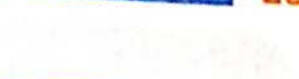
3. Turn the paper over. Fold it in half and crease it.



4. Fold down one wing and crease the top of it. Then fold it down again and crease it again.



5. Repeat step 4 with the other wing. Your Dart is ready to fly!



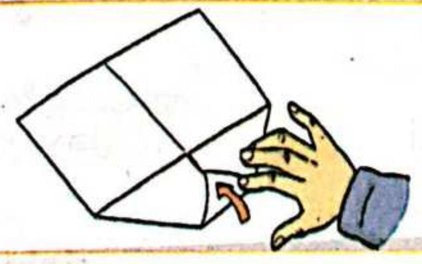
The Glider الطائرة الشراعية



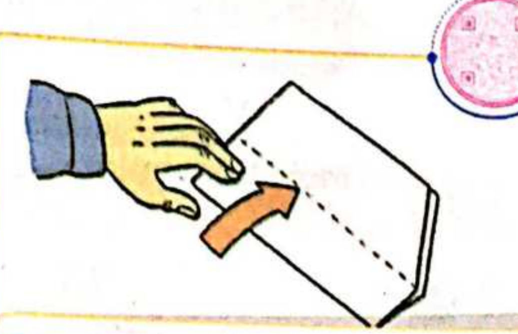
1. Repeat steps 1 and 2 for the Dart.
2. Fold over the top triangle. Crease it.



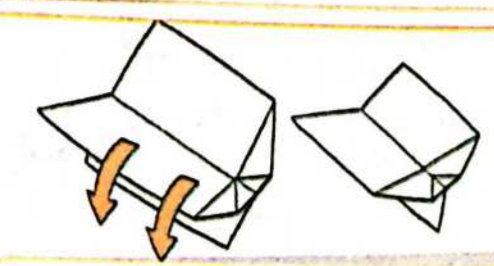
3. Fold over the top two corners again. Make sure all of the paper is flat.



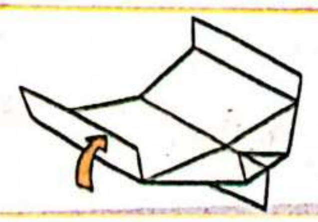
4. Fold over the tip from point to point. Crease everything well.



5. Fold the plane in half.



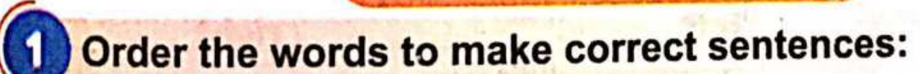
6. Fold down the wings. Fold from one corner to the other corner.



7. Now fold up a small (about 1 cm) piece of the wing. Your Glider is ready to fly!

Exercises on Lesson 3





1 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. make - did - it - you - How?

▶ ....

2. far - fly - How - it - did?

▶ ....

3. airplane - make - easier - is - to - Which?

▶ ....

4. Which - fly - airplane - farther - will?

▶ ....



Lesson 4 Grandpa's special shoes

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس

English	Arabic
special	خاص
normal	طبيعي
gravity	الجاذبية
astronaut	رائد فضاء
amazing feeling	شعور مذهل
stadium	أستاد
tour	جولة سياحية
right	يمين
left	يسار
grandchildren	أحفاد

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
usual	معتاد	parachute	باراشوت
journey	رحلة طويلة	trampoline	بساط القفز

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

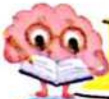
Present		Past	PP
travel	يسافر	traveled	traveled
visit	يزور	visited	visited
show	يعرض	showed	showed
follow	يتبع	followed	followed
start	يبدأ	started	started
jump	يقفز	jumped	jumped
happen	يحدث	happened	happened
reply	يرد	replied	replied

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	PP
hit	يضرب	hit	hit
say	يقول	said	said
tell	يخبر	told	told
bring	يُحضر	brought	brought
sit	يجلس	sat	sat

Definitions

tour	: a journey when you visit many different places
normal	: usual, not different
astronaut	: somebody who travels into space for a job
special	: different from others and better than usual
gravity	: a force that pulls things to the ground



Read and learn



Special shoes حذاء خاص

1. رائد فضاء
2. طبيعي
3. تل
4. الجاذبية
5. حذاء خاص
6. استاد
7. جولة سياحية
8. إلي هذا الاتجاه
9. ينزل أرضًا

It was the year 2122 and Hady and Hoda's grandpa was visiting them. Grandpa was an astronaut ❶ when he was younger. When he visited them, he always brought something interesting.

"Hello Grandpa!" said Hady.

"Do you have something to show us?" asked Hoda.

"I always bring you something, don't I? Look at these," he said.

He showed the children a pair of shoes. "They don't look like normal ❷ shoes," said Hady. "You're right," Grandpa replied.

"Let's go outside. I'll show you what the shoes can do." Hoda and Hady followed Grandpa out of the house to a hill ❸.

They were very excited. They sat down and Grandpa took three pairs of shoes from a bag.

"Gravity ❹ usually pulls things to the ground," said Grandpa. "But these are special shoes ❺. When you wear them, gravity does not pull you down. So children, if you could fly, what would you do?"

"I would fly over the stadium ❻ to watch my favorite football team," Hady said.

"I would fly over the sea," said Hoda.

"Let's start with a tour ❼ of our city," Grandpa said. Put these shoes on. Now, hit your left foot with your right foot three times. One, two, three .... Good. Look! You can fly!"

The children flew up into the air. They could move right or left by moving an arm to that side ❽. If they put both their arms above their head, they flew higher up. If they put their arms down by their sides, they flew down again. Hoda and Hady loved flying. It was an amazing feeling. They could see all the city from up there.



After ten minutes, Grandpa said, "OK children. Now we need to go down to the ground ❾ again."

When they were on the ground, Hoda asked, "Why doesn't everybody have shoes like these?"

"Because they are only for astronauts," said Grandpa. "And special people too, like my favorite grandchildren!"

Exercises on Lesson 

1 Match to make sentences from the story:

'A'	'B'
1. When Grandpa visited Hady and Hoda, he	a) over a football stadium.
2. The shoes he brought were special because gravity	b) tour of their city.
3. Hady wanted to fly	c) always showed them something interesting.
4. They started with a	d) for ten minutes.
5. Hoda and Hady	e) does not pull you down when you wear them.
6. They flew in the air	f) loved flying

2 Complete the text with the words in the box. Listen and check:

air - down - force - ground - Gravity - sun

1 .... is what makes things fall to the 2 .... It is the 3 .... that makes leaves fall to the ground in fall and not float above the tree. When this boy jumps on the bed, gravity brings him 4 .... and stops him floating up into the 5 .... It is also the force that keeps the planets moving around the 6 ....

3 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. astronaut - Grandpa - an - was.

▶ ....

2. something - always - He - interesting - brought.

▶ ....

3. show - have - Do - us - to - you - something?

▶ .... ?

4. usually - things - the ground - pulls - Gravity - to.

▶ ....

5. up - flew - children - The - into - the air.

▶ ....

6. down - need to - the ground - We - to - go.

▶ ....

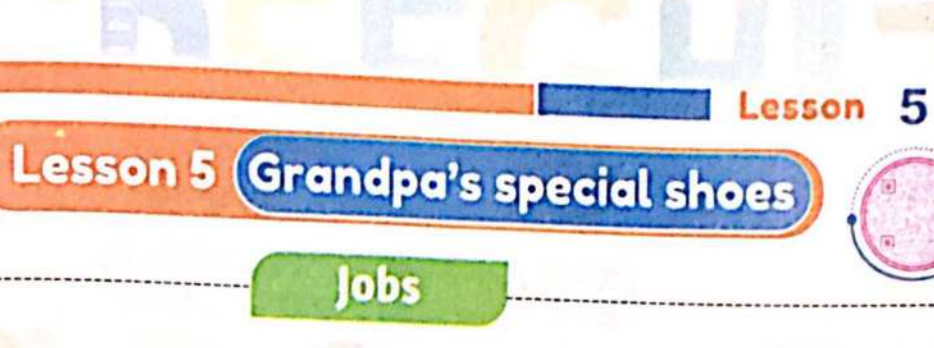
7.- amazing - an - It - feeling - was.

▶ ....

4 Write the correct definition from the words in the box:

astronaut – gravity – normal – special – tour

1. usual, not different ▶ ....
2. a force that pulls things to the ground ▶ ....
3. somebody who travels into space for a job ▶ ....
4. a journey when you visit many different places ▶ ....
5. different from others and better than usual ▶ ....



Lesson 5 Grandpa's special shoes

Jobs



astronaut
رائد فضاء



engineer
مهندس



pilot
طيار



architect
مهندس معماري



doctor
طبيب



scientist
عالِم

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



skateboard
لوح التزلج



planets
كواكب



air resistance
مقاومة الهواء



Mars
المريخ



International Space Station
محطة الفضاء الدولية



research (n)
أبحاث



festival
مهرجان



acceleration
تسريع - تسارع

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	PP
float	يطفو	floated	floated
affect	يؤثر	affected	affected
design	يصمم	designed	designed
sound	يبدو	sounded	sounded
decide	يقرر	decided	decided
study	يدرس	studied	studied
happen	يحدث	happened	happened
reply	يرد	replied	replied

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	PP
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
build	يبني	built	built
grow up	ينمو - يكبر	grew up	grown up

Did you know? هل تعلم؟

On Earth, gravity pushes our bones together. There is no gravity in space, so some bones move apart. So astronauts who spend six months on the International Space Station can grow 3% taller! (They return to their usual size back on Earth.)

على الكرة الأرضية، تضغط الجاذبية على عظام الإنسان، لا يوجد جاذبية فى الفضاء، لذلك بعض العظام تتمدد. لذلك رو اد الفضاء الذين يمكثون ستة أشهر فى محطة الفضاء الدولية يزيدون فى الطول بمعدل 3٪! (يعودون إلى حجمهم الطبيعي عندما يعودون إلى الكرة الأرضية.)

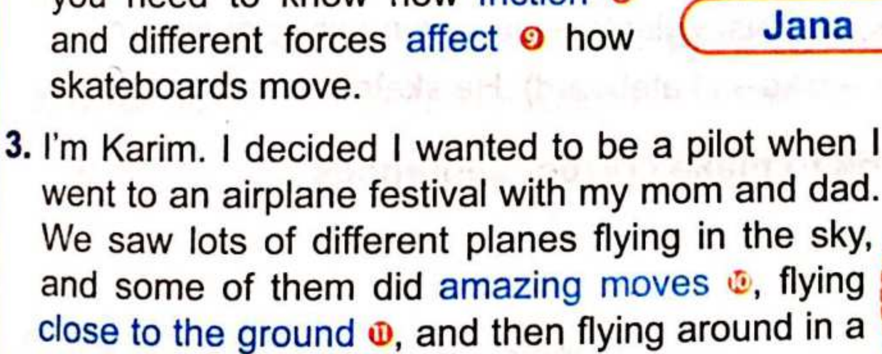
Jobs in science

1. I'm Amal. I want to be an astronaut ❶ because I'm interested in ❷ the stars and the planets. It is important to study other planets because it helps us understand our own planet ❸, and this might help us solve some of Earth's problems. When you see videos of the International Space Station, it looks fun living without gravity - the people float ❹ all the time! I've read a lot about the planet Mars ❺ and the research scientists are doing. Maybe I can visit Mars one day!


Amal

2. My name is Jana. When I grow up, I'd love to be an engineer ❻ like my Uncle Wael. His job sounds really interesting. Did you know that people who do this job don't only help to build roads and bridges? They also help make things such as skateboards ❼! Uncle Wael says that you need to understand science to do this job. For example, you need to know how friction ❽ and different forces affect ❾ how skateboards move.

Jana



3. I'm Karim. I decided I wanted to be a pilot when I went to an airplane festival with my mom and dad. We saw lots of different planes flying in the sky, and some of them did amazing moves ❿, flying close to the ground ⓫, and then flying around in a circle. The planes flew in groups, sometimes with their wings very close together. It looked amazing. There was also a small museum, and I learned how air resistance ⓬ helps the planes to stay in the air!


Karim

❶ رائد فضاء
❷ مهتم بـ
❸ كوكبنا
❹ تطفو
❺ كوكب المريخ
❻ مهندس
❼ ألواح تزلج
❽ احتكاك
❾ يؤثر
❿ حركات مذهلة
⓫ بالقرب من الأرض
⓬ مقاومة الهواء

Exercises on Lesson 5

1 Match "A" with "B":

'A'	'B'
1. Amal wants to be an astronaut	a) visit Mars one day.
2. Amal would like to	b) how friction and different forces make things move.
3. Jana would like to be an engineer	c) some information about old cars.
4. To be an engineer, you need to know	d) because she's interested in the stars and planets.
5. Karim decided he wanted to be a pilot	e) so that she can make things like skateboards.
6. Kamal visited a museum where he learned	f) when he went to an airplane festival.

2 Choose the correct word(s) in brackets:

1. (Pilots – Astronauts – Sailors) travel into space.
2. The (engineer – doctor – teacher) helps to build roads and bridges.
3. I want to be a (policeman – scientist – firefighter), I want to invent new things.
4. The (driver – sailor – pilot) flies planes.
5. The (farmer – architect – officer) designs and builds buildings.
6. The (engineer – doctor – astronaut) works in a hospital.
7. Mars is one of the (planets – plants – planes) in our solar system.
8. He has a (scooter – bike – skateboard). He skates form time to time.

3 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. interested – am – the – I – stars – in.

▶ ....

2. study – It's – important – other – planets – to.

▶ ....

3. love – a doctor – to – would – be – I.

▶ ....

4. job – really – His – sounds – interesting.

▶ ....

5. festival – went – an – to – I – airplane.

▶ ....

6. different – saw – of – planes – lots – We.

▶ ....

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Sherif wanted to be an engineer when he was 10 years old. He always watched TV programs about robots, and he loved making things. When he was 13, he started helping a robot design company online. He did his school work in the day and in the evening he worked on his robot projects. This experience helped him to start his own company. He said that the science and math lessons at school helped him to learn how to solve problems. He also found English very useful as it helps him work with people across the world. He is now learning Japanese so he can talk to people in Japan. "For me, a job is about doing things which help other people around the world," he says.

1. When was Sherif first interested in robots?
   a) when he was 10 b) when he was 13
2. When did he work for a company online?
   a) after he finished his school work b) during the day
3. What did he learn at school which helped him in his job?
   a) how to build robots b) how to solve problems
4. What school subjects most helped him in his job?
   a) math, English, and science b) Japanese
5. What is he learning now to help him in his job?
   a) how to be a teacher b) another language
6. What does Sherif think is important in his job?
   a) working with other people b) helping other people



Lesson 6 Writing an email

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



university جامعة



chemistry الكيمياء



do well يبلي بلاءً حسنًا



organize ينظم



subjects مواد دراسية



physics الفيزياء



advice نصيحة



energy طاقة

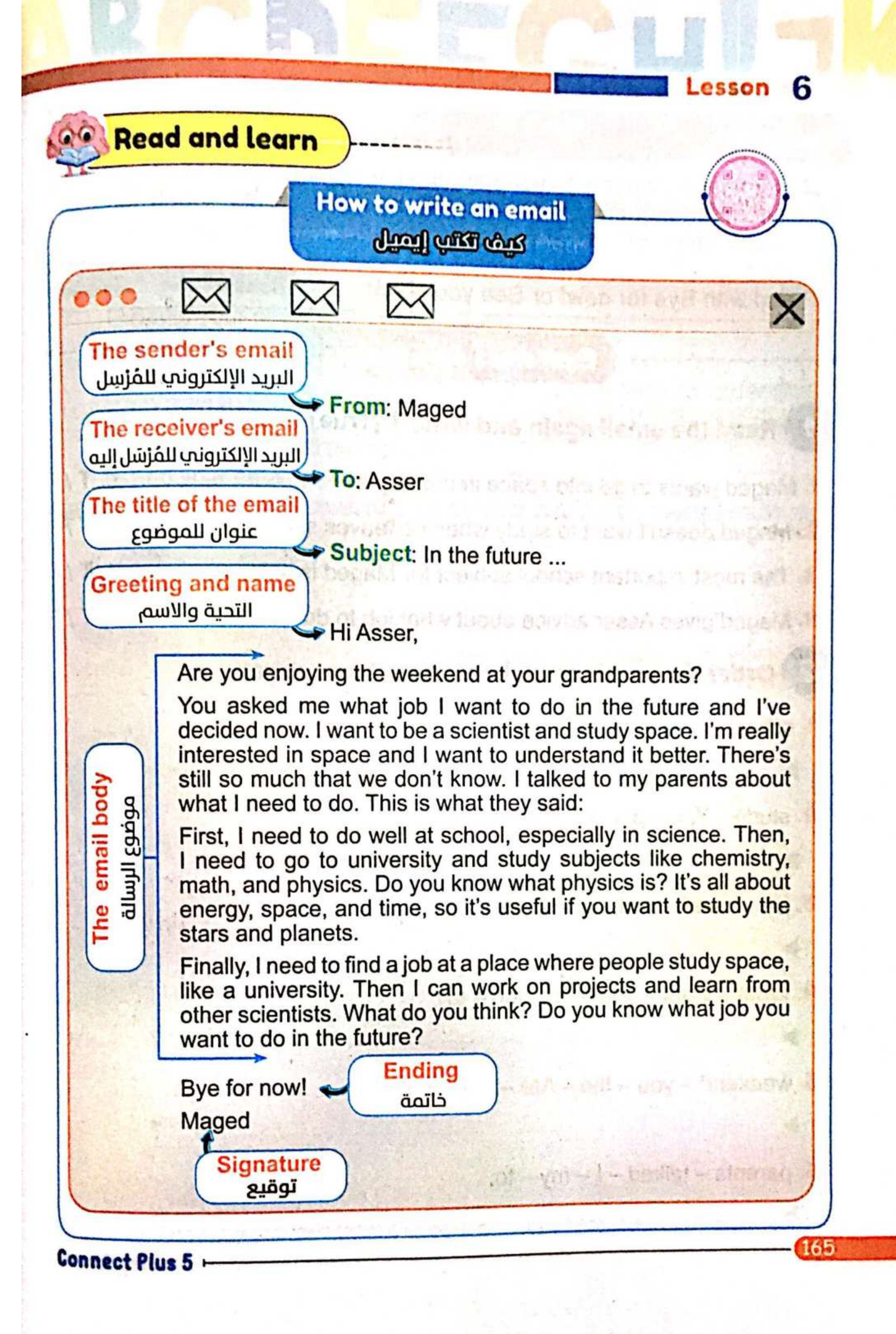
Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	PP
enjoy	يستمتع بـ	enjoyed	enjoyed
work	يعمل	worked	worked
organize	ينظم	organized	organized

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	PP
give	يعطي	gave	given
speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken
leave	يغادر	left	left



Read and learn

How to write an email
كيف تكتب إيميل

The sender's email البريد الإلكتروني للمُرسِل → **From**: Maged

The receiver's email البريد الإلكتروني للمُرسَل إليه → **To**: Asser

The title of the email عنوان للموضوع → **Subject**: In the future ...

Greeting and name التحية والاسم → Hi Asser,

The email body موضوع الرسالة:

Are you enjoying the weekend at your grandparents?

You asked me what job I want to do in the future and I've decided now. I want to be a scientist and study space. I'm really interested in space and I want to understand it better. There's still so much that we don't know. I talked to my parents about what I need to do. This is what they said:

First, I need to do well at school, especially in science. Then, I need to go to university and study subjects like chemistry, math, and physics. Do you know what physics is? It's all about energy, space, and time, so it's useful if you want to study the stars and planets.

Finally, I need to find a job at a place where people study space, like a university. Then I can work on projects and learn from other scientists. What do you think? Do you know what job you want to do in the future?

Bye for now! ← **Ending** خاتمة

Maged ← **Signature** توقيع

Tip!

- Remember, when you write an email to a friend, you can use informal language. You can write how you would speak to them, and start and end in a friendly way. For example:

1- start the email with Hi! or Hello! and How are you?
2- end with Bye for now! or See you soon!



Exercises on Lesson 6

1 Read the email again and write T (True) or F (False):

1. Maged wants to go into space in the future. T / F
2. Maged doesn't want to study when he leaves school. T / F
3. The most important school subject for Maged is science. T / F
4. Maged gives Asser advice about what job to do T / F

2 Order the words to make a correct sentence:

1. school – well – need – I – at – to – do.

▶ ....

2. study – You – planets – to – need.

▶ ....

3. job – need – find – to – a – I.

▶ ....

4. What – want – you – do – job – to?

▶ .... ?

5. weekend – you – the – Are – enjoying?

▶ .... ?

6. parents – talked – I – my – to.

▶ ....



3 Write an email to your friend:

Tell him or her what job you want to do in the future and what you need to do to get it.

Follow these steps:

1- Begin your email with Hi! or Hello!
2. Say what you want to do and why.
3. Use sequencing words: First, Then, and Finally to order the information.
4. Write two or three paragraphs.
5. End your email with Bye for now or See you soon.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

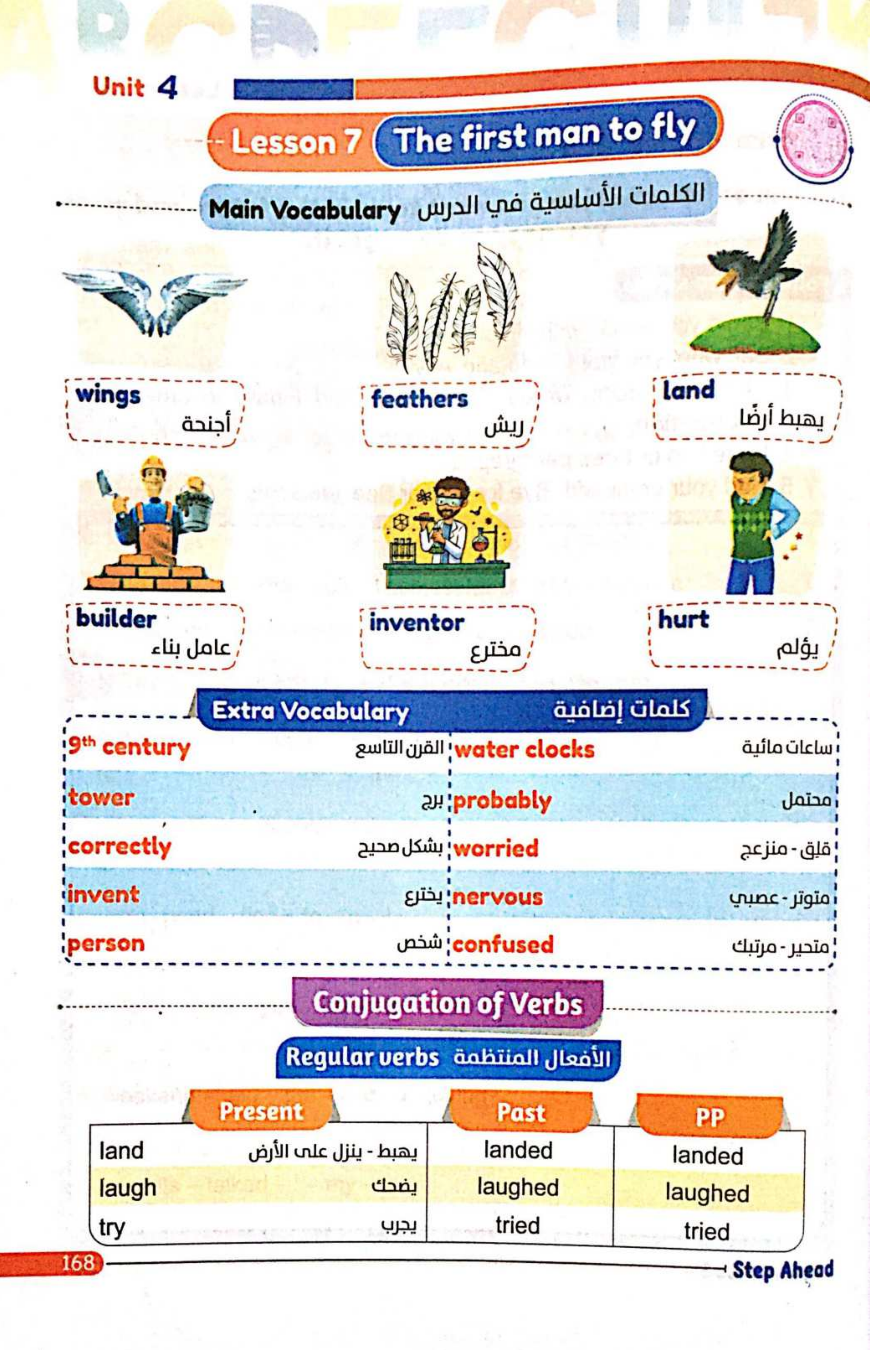
....

....

....

....

....



Lesson 7 The first man to fly

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس

wings أجنحة	**feathers** ريش	**land** يهبط أرضًا
builder عامل بناء	**inventor** مخترع	**hurt** يؤلم

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

9th century	القرن التاسع	water clocks	ساعات مائية
tower	برج	probably	محتمل
correctly	بشكل صحيح	worried	قلق - منزعج
invent	يخترع	nervous	متوتر - عصبي
person	شخص	confused	متحير - مرتبك

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	PP
land	يهبط - ينزل على الأرض	landed	landed
laugh	يضحك	laughed	laughed
try	يجرب	tried	tried

Present		Past	PP
climb	يتسلق	climbed	climbed
invent	يخترع	invented	invented
carry	يحمل	carried	carried
include	يشمل	included	included
share	يشارك	shared	shared

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	PP
find out	يكتشف - يعرف حل	found out	found out
hurt	يؤلم	hurt	hurt
meet	يقابل	met	met

Definitions

invent	: make or design something for the first time
inventor	: a person who makes or designs new things
land	: move down until something is on the ground
builder	: a person who builds houses, schools, etc
feathers	: soft things that cover a bird

Read and learn

The first man to fly



Ali was ten years old and he lived in the 9th century. He worked on his father's farm. Every day that summer, he saw a man walk through the fields towards a tower. The man was old but looked strong. One day, Ali decided to talk to the man.

"Excuse me, where are you going?" Ali asked. "I'm working at the old tower," the man answered.

The first man to fly



"Are you a builder?" Ali asked. The man laughed. "No, I'm an inventor. I'm 65 but I don't want to stop working. There are always new things to find out!"

"What are you working on now?" asked Ali.

"I'm trying to find out how to fly like a bird," the man said, and walked away.

The next day, Ali decided to follow the man. He was carrying something.

"What are you carrying?" asked Ali.

"These are my wings. They're made of wood and feathers," he said.

"Are you going to use them to fly?" asked Ali. "Well, why don't you come with me? Then we'll know, won't we?" he said.

They walked to the tower and climbed to the top. Ali watched as the man put on his wings.

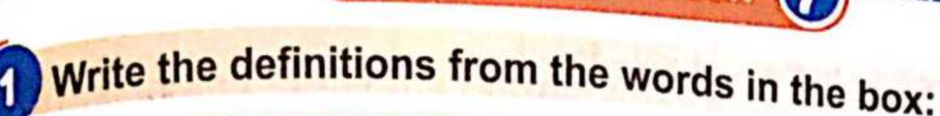
"OK, here I go!" said the man, and he jumped from the tower! Ali was amazed because the man flew slowly to the ground! He did not see him land.

Ali ran back down the tower and soon found the man. He was sitting on the ground. He looked unhappy.

"Are you OK?" said Ali. "No! That hurt!" he said. "But you flew! I saw you!" said Ali.

"I flew, but I did not land correctly," said the man. "I need to study birds better to find out how they land without hurting themselves."

Ali later found out that the man was called Abbas Ibn Firnas. He was an important person who invented many things, including water clocks. But Ali did not know that in the future, Abbas Ibn Firnas became very famous because he was probably the first person ever to fly using wings.



Exercises on Lesson 7

1 Write the definitions from the words in the box:

builder – feathers – invent – inventor - land

1. soft things that cover a bird ▶ ....
2. move down until something is on the ground ▶ ....
3. make or design something for the first tim ▶ ....
4. a person who builds houses, schools, etc. ▶ ....
5. a person who makes or designs new things ▶ ....

2 Read the story again and answer the questions:

1. Why didn't the inventor want to stop working?
   ▶ ....
2. What were the inventor's wings made from?
   ▶ ....
3. What happened when he jumped from the tower?
   ▶ ....
4. What did he not do correctly?
   ▶ ....
5. What did the inventor want to study and why?
   ▶ ....

3 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. landing - ground - This bird - on - is - the.
   ▶ ....
2. worked - his - father's - He - farm - on.
   ▶ ....
3. going - are - you - Where?
   ▶ ....?
4. man - the - Ali - to talk - to - decided.
   ▶ ....
5. a - Are - builder - you?
   ▶ ....?

6. walked - tower - They - the - to.

▶ ....

7. the birds - need - better - study - to – I.

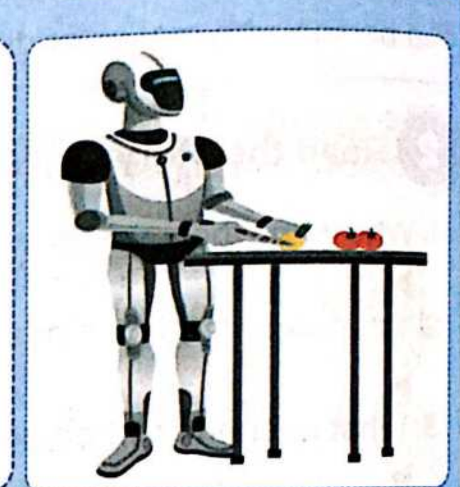
▶ ....

4 Order the words to make correct sentences:

Write a few sentences about each invention. Think about these questions:

▶ Words to help you:

robot helpers
plastic that is safe to heat
clothes that wash themselves
clocks that slow time
a second moon for our planet
phones that can talk to trees
- Why would you like to invent this?
- What would you do with it?
- How would it help people or the planet?



....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (4Ms)

When you ride a bike, you use force to get the bike to move by pushing the pedals. You also use force to stop the brake bike, by using the brakes. That slows down or stops the wheels. If you want to increase your speed, push the pedals more quickly.
You'll need to cycle harder when you go up that hill. But remember, when you go down the hill, the bike is going to go faster, so you'll need to use the brakes.

1. The bike moves by the (pulling – pushing – speed – brakes) force.
2. You use force to stop the brake bike, by using the (brakes – wheels – pedals – tires).
3. If you want to increase your (mass – odor – activity – speed), push the pedals more quickly.
4. You also use force to stop the brake bike, by using the (wheels – tires – pedals – brakes).

2 Listen and complete: (4Ms)

My name is Jana. When I grow up, I'd love to be an engineer like my Uncle Wael. His job sounds really interesting. Engineers help make things such as skateboards! Uncle Wael says that you need to understand science to do this job. For example, you need to know how friction and different forces affect how skateboards move

1. Jana would love to be an ....
2. Engineers help make things such as ....
3. Wael says that you need to understand .... to do this job.
4. You need to know how .... affects how skateboards move.

ملحوظة هامة: عند إجابة سؤال الاستماع يجب على الطفل قراءة الأسئلة جميعها جيدًا قبل الاستماع ثم يقوم بالإجابة أثناء سماع النص.
☆ يقوم المُعلم أو ولي الأمر بمسح الكود الموجود للاستماع إلى نص الاستماع أو يقوم المُعلم أو ولي الأمر بالجلوس مقابل الطفل وقراءة النص له ويقوم الطفل بالإجابة أثناء الاستماع.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4Ms)

gravity – astronaut – float – problems – planets

I'm Amal. I want to be an .... because I'm interested in the stars and the .... It is important to study other planets because it helps us understand our own planet, and this might help us solve some of Earth's .... When you see videos of the International Space Station, it looks fun living without gravity - the people .... all the time!

4 Read the following text and then answer the questions below: (4Ms)

Cairo Tower is one of the most famous buildings in Cairo. People from all over the world and from many parts of Egypt like to visit it. The tower is 185 metres high and was built in 1961. Three electric lifts take visitors up to the top which looks like a large lotus flower. At the top, there's a restaurant which moves round while you have your meal or your drink. From the top of the tower, you can see the Nile, all of Cairo, Giza and Helwan. You can see the Pyramids to the west and Cairo Airport to the east.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. People get to the top of the tower (on foot – in a winch – in a lift).
2. The top of the tower looks like a large (lotus – papyrus – jasmine) flower.

B Answer these questions:

3. How old is Cairo Tower?

▶ ....

4. What can people see from the top of the tower?

▶ ....

The Reader

5 A- Read and write T (True) or F (False): (4Ms)

1. Jubari is a brave and curious son. (   )
2. Jubari found Wadi el Gazelles. (   )

5 Answer these questions:

3. Why does the river in Waimea Canyon look red?

▶ ....

4. Why do you think people surf down Cerro Negro?

▶ ....

6 Choose the correct answer:

(4Ms)

1. We can't take photos in here, (can't – will – can) we?
2. It wasn't very cold yesterday, (was – wasn't – isn't) it?
3. He went to the club with me, (did he – didn't he – wasn't he)?
4. She has a nice blue dress, (doesn't she – has she – hasn't she)?

7 Order the words to make a correct sentence:

(2Ms)

1. gravity - There - space - no - is - on.

▶ ....

2. you - paper plane - Have - a - made - ever?

▶ ....?

8 Write a text of (55) words using the following guiding elements: (4Ms)

Words to help you: parachuting – dangerous – sport – person – jump – plane counts – press – button – parachute – opens

....

....

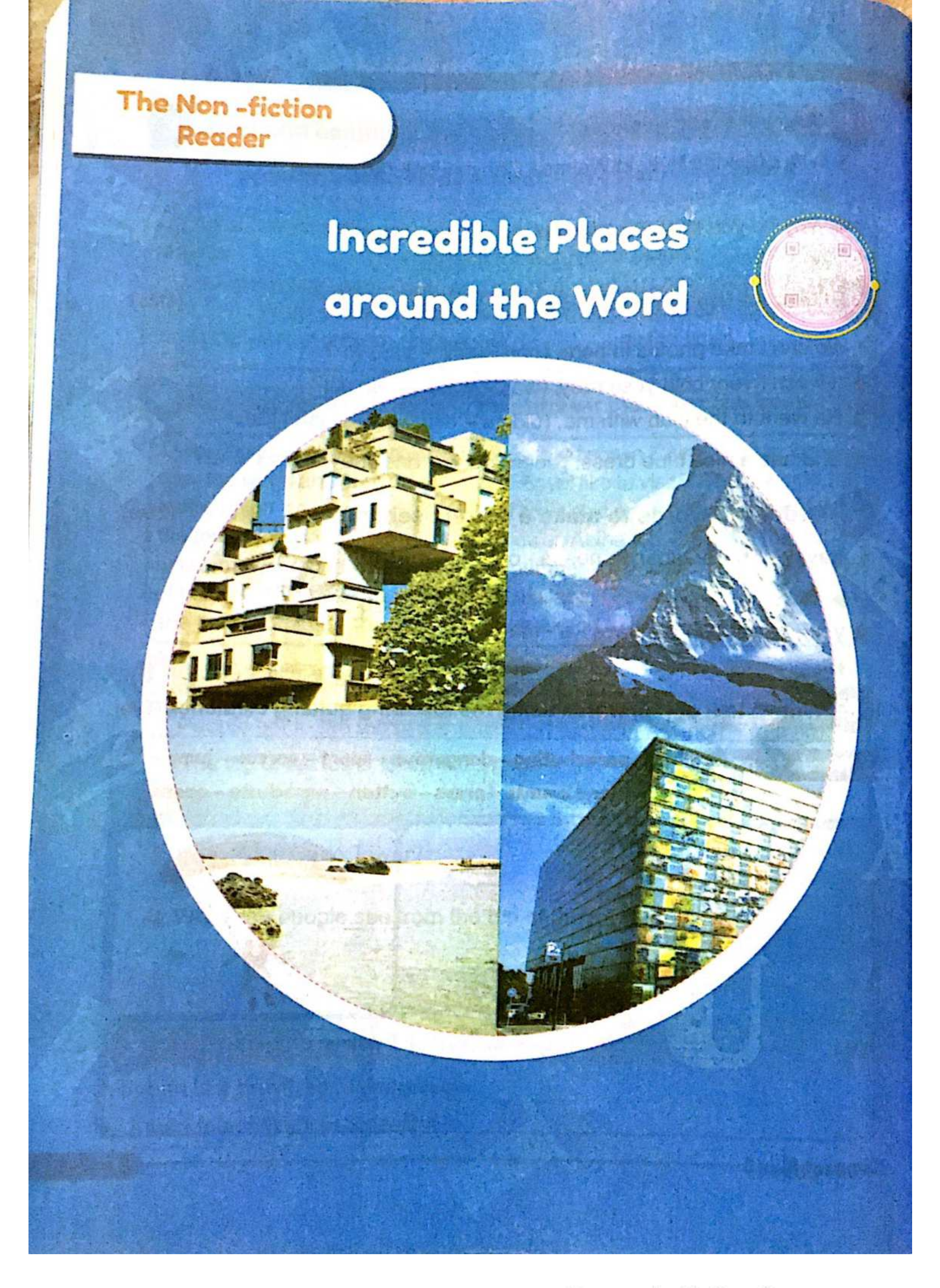
....

....

....

....

....


The Non -fiction
Reader
Incredible Places
around the Word

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية

incredible places	أماكن مذهلة	erode	ينحت
divers	غواصين	Pacific Ocean	المحيط الهادى
colorful fish	سمك ملون	dangerous	خطير
turtles	سلاحف	hill	تل
columns	أعمدة	climb up	يتسلق
rise	تبرز	slopes	منحدرات
erupt	ينفجر - يثور (للبركان)	surf	يتزلج
giants	عمالقة	canyon	وادي
shape	شكل	popular	مشهور

There are some amazing places around the world which are very famous. For example, we all know the Sahara Desert, Mount Everest, and the Amazon rainforest. Here we look at some other incredible places which you might not know.

Sharm El Luli - Marsa Alam



Sharm El Luli beach is one of the most beautiful beaches on the Red Sea. Its clean, blue waters make it very popular with tourists. Divers also love going here because you can see many colorful fish. You can sometimes see turtles, too. The beach is 60 kilometers south of Marsa Alam.

The Giant's Causeway - Northern Ireland



The Giant's Causeway is in Northern Ireland. It's made of around 40,000 black rock ***columns*** *which rise from the sea. Scientists have discovered that they formed when a volcano erupted 50-60 million years ago, but some people say that giants made them so they could get to the Scottish Island of Staffa across the sea!*

Story

The Matterhorn - Switzerland



Some people say this is the most beautiful mountain in Europe. It's 4,478 meters tall and has the shape of a pyramid with four sides. It's like this because of the way the ice eroded the rock. About 3,000 people climb the mountain every year.

Waimea Canyon - Hawaii, USA



The islands of Hawaii are part of the USA, although they are more than 7,000 kilometers away in the Pacific Ocean. The Waimea Canyon here is an amazing place. A river has eroded a canyon which is 16 kilometers long and nearly 1,000 meters deep. Waimea is the Hawaiian word for red water. It's called this because of the red soil which makes the river look red.

Cerro Negro - Nicaragua, South America



*Cerro Negro is a volcano in Nicaragua, and it has erupted more than 20 times in the last 160 years! However, it has not erupted for more than 20 years, so it is not usually dangerous. Its name means black hill and many people climb up its black **slopes**. When they get to the top, many people **surf** back down again!*

Questions with their model answers

1 Answer the following questions:

1. Why do you think that Sharm El Luli beach is one of the most beautiful beaches on the Red Sea?
   - Because of its clean, blue waters.
2. Why do divers love going to Sharm El Luli?
   - Because they can see many colorful fish there.
3. Where is Sharm El Luli beach?
   - The beach is 60 kilometers south of Marsa Alam.
4. Where is Giant's Causeway?
   - Giant's Causeway is in Northern Ireland.

5. What is the Giant's Causeway made of?
   ▶ It's made of around 40,000 black rock columns which rise from the sea.
6. How was the Giant's Causeway formed?
   ▶ Scientists have discovered that they formed when a volcano erupted 50-60 million years ago, but some people say that giants made them so they could get to the Scottish island of Staff across the sea.
7. How tall the Matterhorn is?
   ▶ It's 4,478 meters tall.
8. Where is the Matterhorn?
   ▶ The Matterhorn is in Switzerland.
9. Describe the Matterhorn.
   ▶ It's 4,478 meters tall and has the shape of a pyramid with four sides.
10. How many people climb the Matterhorn every year?
    ▶ About 3,000 people climb the mountain every year.
11. Where is Hawaii?
    ▶ Hawaii is in USA.
12. How was Waimea Canyon Hawaii formed?
    ▶ A river has eroded the canyon which is 16 kilometers long and nearly 1,000 meters deep.
13. Describe Waimea Canyon Hawaii.
    ▶ The Waimea Canyon is an amazing place. A river has eroded a Canyon which is 16 kilometers long and nearly 1,000 meters deep. The Nile looks red because of the red soil.
14. Why is Waimea Hawaii called "Waimea"?
    ▶ Waimea is the Hawaiian word for red water. It's called this because of the red soil which makes the river look red.
15. Where is Cerro Negro?
    ▶ Cerro Negro is a volcano in Nicaragua, South America.
16. What does Cerro Negro means?
    ▶ Its name means black hill.
17. Is Cerro Negro a dangerous or safe place?
    ▶ It has not erupted for more than 20 years, so it is not usually dangerous.
18. What is the activity that people do in the Cerro Negro area?
    ▶ Many people climb up its black slopes. When they get to the top, many people surf back down again.

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. (Sharm El Luli – Cerro Negro – Waimea Canyon) is one of the most beautiful beaches on the Red Sea.
2. Divers love going to Sharm El Luli because (it is big – it is popular – it has many colorful fish).
3. The beach is (6 kilometers south – 16 kilometers south – 60 kilometers south) of Marsa Alam.
4. The Giant's Causeway is in (Western Ireland – Northern Ireland – Southern Ireland).
5. The Giant's Causeway is made of (40,000 – 4,000 – 400) black rock columns.
6. (Sharm El Luli – The Matterhorn – Waimea Canyon) is the most beautiful mountain in Europe.
7. The Matterhorn is (4,784 – 4,478 – 4,874) meters tall and has the shape of a pyramid with four sides.
8. The Matterhorn has the shape of a pyramid because of the way the ice (helped – eroded – broke) the rock.
9. About 3,000 people (surf – jump – climb) the mountain every year.
10. The islands of Hawaii are part of the (USA – Egypt – Ireland).
11. Waimea it the (Egyptian – Hawaiian – Scottish) word for red water.
12. Cerro Negro is a (beach – mountain – volcano).
13. Cerro Negro is in (Nicaragua – Egypt – USA).
14. Cerro Negro has erupted more than (20 times – 40 times – 60 times) in the last 160 years.
15. Cerro Negro means (black stone – black bird – black hill).

Answers

1- Sharm El Luli	2- It has many colorful fish	3- 60 kilometers south	4- Northern Ireland
5- 40,000	6- The Matterhorn	7- 4,478	8- eroded
9- climb	10- USA	11- Hawaiian	12- volcano
13- Nicaragua	14- 20 times	15- black hill	

3 Write true or false:

1. Sharm El Luli beach is one the most beautiful beaches on the Red Sea. ( )
2. Sharm El Luli beach has blue water. ( )
3. Divers don't love going to Sharm El Luli. ( )
4. Sharm El Luli beach is 60 kilometers South of Marsa Alam.
5. The Giant's Causeway is in Southern Ireland. ( )
6. The Giant's Causeway is made of around 4,000 black rock columns. ( )
7. The Matterhorn is the most beautiful mountain in Europe.
8. The Matterhorn is 4,748 meters tall and has the shape of a pyramid with four sides. ( )
9. About 3,000 people climb the Matterhorn every year. ( )
10. The islands of Hawaii are part of the USA. ( )
11. The Canyon is called Waimea because of the red soil which makes the river look red. ( )
12. Cerro Negro is a volcano in Egypt. ( )
13. Cerro Negro has erupted more than 20 times in the last 160 years. ( )
14. Cerro Negro means red hill. ( )

Answers

1- T	2- T	3- F	4- T
5- F	6- F	7- T	8- F
9- T	10- T	11- T	12- F
13- T	14- F		

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية

man-made places	أماكن من صنع الإنسان	lay their eggs	يضعون البيض
space	حيز - مساحة	Institute for Sound and Vision	معهد الصوت والرؤية
apartment building	مبنى سكني (عمارة)	newspaper	جريدة
terrace	شرفة	Mediterranean	البحر المتوسط
Chinese artist	فنان صيني	harbor	ميناء
sports stadium	استاد رياضي	habitat	مسكن
architect	مهندس معماري	view	منظر

2 Look and read. Which of these buildings is the newest?

We all know the famous man-made places around the world like the Pyramids of Giza and the Sydney Opera House, but every year, people are always trying to build more and more amazing buildings. Here we look at some other incredible man-made places which you might not know.

Bibliotheca Alexandrina, Alexandria, Egypt

Opened in 2010, the famous Bibliotheca Alexandrina has space for eight million books! The beautiful modern building by the Mediterranean is the same shape as Alexandria's harbor, and has a 32-meter high wall with writing from languages through history.



Habitat 67, Montreal, Canada

*Many of us live in tall **apartment buildings** where we have people living above or below us. But Habitat 67 is very different to most apartment buildings! Here, the 148 apartments look like a big children's puzzle! Built in 1967, its apartments all have a **terrace** with amazing views over the city.*



Beijing National Stadium, China



There are many amazing sports stadiums around the world, but not many are designed by artists! Chinese artist Ai Weiwei designed the Beijing National Stadium for the 2008 Olympic Games with some **architects**, and now 80,000 people can visit it for sports events. Most people call it the **Birds Nest** because it looks like a place where birds lay their eggs!

Institute for Sound and Vision, the Netherland



The architects of this museum like color! The building of the Institute for Sound and Vision is made of hundreds of colored pieces of glass. Opened in 2006, the museum teaches you all about the **media**, including television, radio, newspapers and social media.

Questions with their model answers

1 Answer the following questions:

1. When was Bibliotheca Alexandria opened?
   - It was opened in 2010.
2. How Habitat 67 is different to most apartment buildings?
   - As the 148 apartments look like a big children's puzzle! Its apartments all have a terrace with amazing views over the city.
3. When was Habitat 67 built?
   - It was built in 1967.
4. Why is Beijing National Stadium a special stadium?
   - It is special because it looks like a place where birds lay their eggs.
5. Who designed Beijing National Stadium?
   - The Chinese artist Ai Waimea designed it.
6. What is Beijing National Stadium called?
   - It is called Birds Nest.

7. What does the Institute for Sound and Vision teach?
   ▶ The museum teaches you all about the media, including TVs, radio, newspapers and social media.
8. When was the Institute for Sound and Vision opened?
   ▶ It was opened in 2006.
9. What does the Institute for Sound and Vision look like? (Describe the Institute for Sound and Vision).
   ▶ The architects of this museum like color! The building is made of hundreds of colored pieces of glass.
10. Which of these buildings is the newest?
    ▶ Bibliotheca Alexandria is the newest building.
11. Why was Beijing National Stadium built?
    ▶ For the 2008 Olympic Games.
12. How many books can you find in the Bibliotheca Alexandria?
    ▶ Alexandria has space for eight million books.
13. Which building is made of hundreds of pieces of colored glass?
    ▶ Institute for Sound and Vision.
14. Where are the Habitat 67 apartment buildings?
    ▶ The Habitat 67 apartment buildings are in Montreal, Canada.
15. Which place is called the Birds Nest?
    ▶ Most people call Beijing National Stadium the Birds Nest.
16. Which building was built for 2008 Olympic Games?
    ▶ Beijing National Stadium was designed for the 2008 Olympic Games.
17. Which building was built in 1967 and has lots of terraces?
    ▶ Habitat 67 was built in 1967 and its apartments have a terrace with amazing views over the city.
18. Where can you learn about television and social media?
    ▶ Institute for sound and vision teaches you all about the media, including television, radio, newspapers, and social media.
19. Which building has writing from different languages on high wall?
    ▶ Bibliotheca Alexandria has a 32-meter high wall with writing from languages through history.

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. Bibliotheca Alexandria was opened in (2001 – 2010 – 1020).
2. Bibliotheca Alexandria has a space for (nine million – a million – eight million) books.
3. Bibliotheca Alexandria has a (32 centimeters – 23 meters – 32 meters) high wall.
4. There are (pictures – paintings – writings) from languages through history on the wall of Bibliotheca Alexandria.
5. Habitat 67 has (67 – 150 – 148) apartments.
6. Habitat 67 looks like children's (toys – tools – puzzle).
7. Habitat 67 was built in (1976 – 1967 – 1970).
8. Habitat 67's apartments have a (terrace – garden – mirror).
9. (Egyptian – Chinese – Korean) artist designed the Beijing National Stadium.
10. Ai Weiwei designed the Beijing National Stadium for the (2008 – 2009 – 2010) Olympics Games.
11. Most people call Ai Weiwei's design the (Duck Nest – Birds Nest – Chicken Nest).
12. Institute for Sound and Vision is newer than (Bibliotheca Alexandria – Habitat 67 – Beijing National Stadium).
13. (Habitat 67 – Bibliotheca Alexandria – Institute for Sound and Vision) teaches you all about the media.

Answers

1- 2010	2- eight million	3- 32 meters	4- writings
5- 148	6- children's puzzle	7- 1967	8- eterrace
9- Chinese	10- the 2008 Olympic Games	11- Bird Nest	12- Habitat 67
13- Institute for sound and vision			

3 Write true or false:

1. Bibliotheca Alexandria was opened in 2017. ( )
2. The apartments of Habitat 67 have a terrace with amazing view over the city. ( )
3. Chinese artist Ai Weiwei designed the Beijing National Stadium for the 2008 Olympic Games. ( )
4. - Beijing National Stadium is called the Birds Nest because birds lay their eggs there. ( )
5. Institute for Sound and Vision helps disabled people. ( )
6. Beijing National Stadium looks like a big children's puzzle. ( )
7. Bibliotheca is called a Bird Nest. ( )
8. Alexandria has space for eight million books. ( )
9. Bibliotheca Alexandria is by the Red Sea. ( )
10. Bibliotheca Alexandria has a 32-meter-high wall with writing from languages through history. ( )
11. Habitat 67 has 150 apartments that look like a big children's puzzle. ( )
12. Habitat 67 was built in 1967. ( )
13. The Institute for Sound and Vision is made of hundreds of colored pieces of glass. It was opened in 2006. ( )

Answers

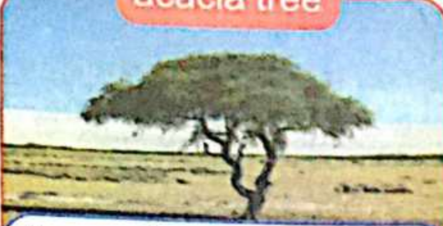
1- F	2- T	3- T	4- F
5- F	6- F	7- F	8- T
9- F	10- T	11- F	12- T
13- T			


The Fiction
Reader
Jubari searches
for home
By: Jennifer Farmer

Picture dictionary قاموس مصور

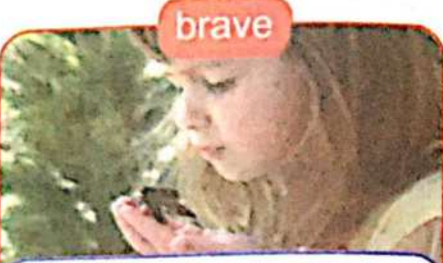


acacia tree



An acacia tree is a species of tree which grows in hot dry places.

brave



If you are brave, you are not afraid in dangerous or difficult situations.

daffodil



Daffodils are species of yellow flower which grow from bulbs.

hoof \ hooves



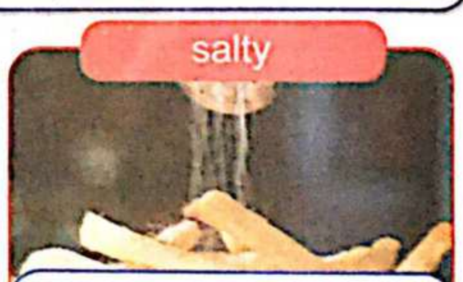
A hoof is the hard foot of an animal. For example, horses, goats, and cows have hooves.

Nubian ibex



The Nubian ibex is a species of goat which lives in the mountains of northern Africa and the Middle East.

salty



Food with a lot of salt in tastes salty.

seagrass



Seagrass is a species of plant which grows under the sea.

steep

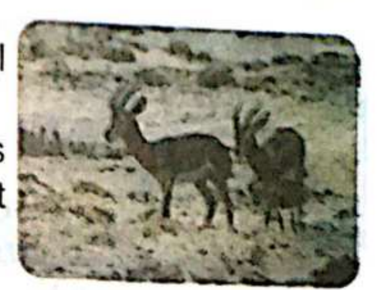


A steep hill goes up or down very quickly, and so it is difficult to climb.

Before you read the story

An additional piece of information معلومة اضافية

غزال الدوركاس هو أحد أصغر أنواع الغزلان وأكثرها شيوعا حيث يتراوح علوّه بين 53 و 65 سنتيمترات، وطوله بين 80 و 110 سنتيمترات ، ويزن ما بين 12 إلى 25 كيلوغراما سيقانه طويلة، يكسوه فراء قصير ناعم، بلون رملي على الظهر وأعلى الجانبين وعلى السيقان، أبيض أسفل الجسم وعلى باطن السيقان، آذانه كبيرة، ذيله قصير، أسود من فوق. يعيش في الصحراء ويحصل على الماء اللازم لجسمه من خلال النباتات العشبية التي يأكلها.



Jubari the dorcas gazelle was born in Wadi el Gemal in Egypt's Eastern desert.

For the first year of his life, Jubari followed his mother, Subira. She showed him which plants to eat and where to rest on hot days.



Jubari was very brave ❶. He wanted to go everywhere and play with all the animals. However, Subira taught him ❷ which animals were dangerous and how to stay away ❸ from predators ❹. He learned to run away very quickly.



One day, Jubari and Subira were looking for food. Jubari asked his mother, "Mom, what is this place called?" Subira answered, "This is Wadi el Gemal, son. It means 'Wadi of the Camels'."

"Why do we live in the Wadi of the Camels?" Jubari said. "We are gazelles."

Subira laughed. "It's only a name, son. Many animals live here. Wadi el Gemal is the perfect place ❺ for gazelles"

❶ شجاع

❷ علمته

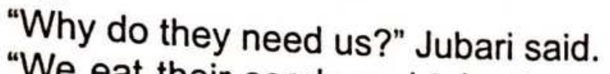
❸ يبقى بعيدًا

❹ الحيوانات المفترسة

❺ افضل مكان



"Why?" Jubari said.
"Well", said his mother. "There are special plants here. First, there's our favorite food, the desert daffodil ❻! And there is also the acacia tree. Their leaves give us food and water all year round, so we never need to drink. And the acacia trees need us, too."



"Why do they need us?" Jubari said.
"We eat their seeds and take them to new places. Then more acacia trees grow."



"I understand," said Jubari. "But is there a place called 'Wadi of the Gazelles'?"
"I don't know," said his mother.
"I am going to look for it," said Jubari.
"OK," said his mother. "But remember all the things I have taught you and come back soon!"



Jubari decided ❼ to go east. He was excited, so he ran very quickly.
Soon, he saw some new kinds of trees. He walked into the trees and stopped. His hooves ❽ were under water!
Jubari was thirsty, so he tried to drink. "Yuck!" he said. The water was very, very salty ❾.
Then he heard a voice.
"You can't drink that water! It's sea water".



❻ النرجس البري
❼ قرر
❽ حوافر
❾ مالح



Jubari looked and saw a big white animal in the water. It was looking at him.
"I'm Donga. I'm a dugong ⑩. I live here in the mangrove forest by ⑪ the Red Sea." I'm thirsty," said Jubari.
"Would you like some of my seagrass ⑫?" said Donga.
Jubari tried the seagrass, but it was very salty ⑬, too.
"Thank you," he said. But the mangrove forest is too salty for me! Do you know where I can find the 'Wadi of the Gazelles'?'"
"I'm sorry," said Donga. "I don't know."



Next, Jubari ran north. He ran and ran. Soon he came to a place where the ground was white, and very soft. He walked slowly. His hooves were going into the ground.
Then he heard a voice. "Please don't walk here. My eggs are in the sand."



Jubari looked. It was a brown turtle.
"I'm sorry", said Jubari. "What is this place?"
"It's my home", said the turtle. "Ras Hankorab beach."
"It's very nice," said Jubari. "But it's not a good place for gazelles. We can't run fast here because the sand is too soft."



Jubari decided to go south. He ran and ran. He came to some mountains. "I might see the Wadi of Gazelles' from the top," he thought.
Jubari climbed the biggest mountain. It was very steep ⑭. His legs became ⑮ very tired.

⑩ بقرة البحر
⑪ بجوار
⑫ عشب البحر
⑬ مالح
⑭ منحدر
⑮ أصبحت

Then he saw an animal, a Nubian ibex [16].
Jubari said, "Hello! Have you been to the top of this mountain?"
"Yes," said the ibex. "This is Gebel Elba. It's my home."
"It's too steep [17] for my legs." said Jubari. "Can you see the 'Wadi of the Gazelles' from the top?"
"I don't know that place," said the ibex. "But I can see a very big lake to the west."

Jubari thought, "I've gone east. I've gone south and north, but I haven't gone west."
He ran and ran. After a long time, he came to a very big lake.
"What is this place?" he said.
"This is Lake Nasser [18]," said a voice [19]. "It's a man-made lake. The people made it because they needed water. It's an important resource [20] for them. But delicious gazelles don't need water to drink, do they?"

Jubari couldn't see who was speaking. Then a dead tree in the water moved. It wasn't a tree! It was an animal!
"What are you?" said Jubari.
"I'm a crocodile," said the animal. "This is my home, and I'm hungry". Jubari's mother taught him not to stay near animals with big teeth. It was too dangerous! He ran and ran...



... all the way home to the Wadi el Gemal.

16 تيس الجبل
17 منحدر جدًا
18 بحيرة ناصر
19 صوت
20 مُورد \ مصدر

He looked for Subira."Mom! Mom!" he cried.
"Jubari, my brave and curious (21) son. You are home," his mother said, smiling. She asked, "Did you find the 'Wadi of the Gazelles'?"
"No, I didn't. But I found a lot of other places."
"Did you like them?" his mother asked.
"Not all of them. The mangroves were too salty. The beach was too sandy. The mountains were too steep. And there weren't many acacia trees.



"Well, we have a lot of acacia trees here, and the desert is perfect for us to run and run!"
"Yes," said Jubari. "You were right (22). Wadi el Gemal is the perfect place (23) for gazelles."
"I'm so happy that you agree," she smiled.



(21) فضولي \ مُحب للاستطلاع (22) مُحق (23) مكان مثالي

Questions with their model answers

1 Answer the following questions: From page 88 to 92

1. Where was Jubari born?
   ▶ Jubari was born in Wadi el Gemal in Egypt's Eastern desert.
2. Who is Subira? ▶ She is Jubari's mother.
3. What did Subira teach Jubari?
   ▶ Subira taught him which animals were dangerous and how to stay safe.
4. Is Wadi El Gemal for camels only? Why?
   ▶ No, because many animals live there.
5. Is Wadi el Gemal a perfect place for gazelles? Why?
   ▶ Yes, it is perfect for gazelles because it has their favorite food, the desert daffodil, and there is also the acacia tree.
6. Do the gazelle need to drink water? Why?
   ▶ No, the acacia trees' leaves give the gazelles the food and drink, so they never need to drink.

7. Why do the acacia trees need gazelles?

▶ They eat their seeds and take them to new places, then more acacia trees grow.

8. Do you think that there is a place which is called 'Wadi of the gazelles'?

▶ No, there isn't a place with this name.

9. What is Jubari going to look for?

▶ Jubari is going to look for Wadi el Gazelles.

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. Jubari the docas gazelle was born in (Wadi el Gemal – Wadi of the Gazelles – Western desert).
2. Subira is Jubari's (cousin – sister – mother).
3. Jubari was (coward – brave – lazy).
4. Subira taught him which animals were (fast – slow – dangerous).
5. Subira taught him to (stay away from - be close to - near) predators.
6. Jubari and Subira lived in (Wadi El Gemal – Wadi of the gazelles – Lake Nasser).
7. Wadi El Gemal is a perfect place for (dugongs - turtles - gazelles).
8. Wadi el Gemal is a special place because (it has a salty water - its sand is soft - there is the acacia tree).
9. Acacia tree's leaves give the gazelle (food - water - food and water).
10. We eat their (leaves – seeds – roots) and take them to new places, then more acacia trees grow.
11. Jubari is going to look for (Wadi el Gazelle - Wadi el Gemal - Lake Nasser).

Answers

1- Wadi el Gemal	2- mother	3- brave	4- dangerous
5- stay away from	6- Wadi el Gemal	7- gazelles	8- there is the acacia tree
9- food and drink	10- seeds	11- Wadi el Gazelle.	

3 Write T (True) or F (False):

1. Jubari is a dorcas gazelle. ( )
2. Jubari was born in Wadi el Gemal in Egypt's Eastern desert. ( )
3. Subira showed Jubari which plants to eat and where to rest on hot days. ( )
4. Jubari was brave. ( )
5. Subira taught Jubari how to be close to predators. ( )
6. Subira taught Jubari to run slowly. ( )
7. Jubari and his mother lived in Wadi el Gazelle. ( )
8. Wadi el Gemal is a terrible place for gazelles. ( )
9. Wadi el Gemal is suitable for gazelles because it has acacia trees. ( )
10. Acacia trees need the gazelles. ( )
11. Jubari is going to look for Wadi El Gemal. ( )

Answers

1- T	2- T	3- T	4- T
5- F	6- F	7- F	8- F
9- T	10- T	11- F	

4 Answer the following questions:

From page 93 to 94

1. Why couldn't Jubari drink sea water?
   ▶ Because it was very, very salty.
2. Which animal did Jubari meet in the east?
   ▶ In the east, Jubari met dugong.
3. Describe the dugong.
   ▶ It is big and white.
4. Did Jubari like the dugong's seagrass? Why?
   ▶ No, because the seagrass was very salty.
5. Where does the dugong live?
   ▶ It lives in the mangrove forest by the Red Sea.

5 Choose the correct answer:

1. Jubari decided to go (west – east – north) where he met the dugong.
2. Jubari saw some (orange – apple – mangrove) trees. He walked into the trees and stopped.
3. Jubari was thirsty, so he tried to drink, but he couldn't because the water was (fresh – dirty – salty).
4. The (dugong – ibex – crocodile) is a big white animal.
5. The dugong lives in a (big house – mango trees – mangrove forest).
6. Jubari didn't eat the seagrass because (he wasn't hungry – he didn't like it – it was very salty).

Answers

1- east	2- mangrove	3- salty	4- dugong
5- mangrove forest	6- it was very salty		

6 Write T (True) or F (False):

1. The dugong lives in the mango tree. ( )
2. The dugong eats seagrass. ( )
3. The dugong is a small white animal. ( )
4. Jubari couldn't drink sea water or eat the seagrass because he wasn't hungry or thirsty. ( )

Answers

1- F	2- T	3- F	4- F

7 Answer the following questions: From page 95 to 96

1. Describe the place which was in the north.
   ▶ It is a place where the ground was white, and very soft.
2. Why did Jubari walk slowly in the north?
   ▶ He walked slowly in the soft sand because his hooves were going into the ground.

3. Why did the brown turtle ask Jubari not to walk here?
 ▶ The brown turtle asked him not to walk here because its eggs were in the sand.
4. Where is the turtle's home?
 ▶ On Ras Hankorab beach.
5. Where does the dugong live?
 ▶ It lives in the mangrove forest by the Red Sea.
6. Is Ras Hankorab beach a good place for gazelles?
 ▶ No, because they can't run fast here because of the soft sand.
7. What is Jubari's view about the turtle's home?
 ▶ It's a very nice place, but it isn't suitable for gazelles.

8 Choose the correct answer:

1. Jubari looked at a (green – red – brown) turtle.
2. Ras Hankorab beach is a (perfect – bad – good) place for gazelles.
3. Gazelles can't run fast here because the sand is too (soft – much – rough).
4. Jubari met the turtle in the (east – west – north).
5. The (ibex's – crocodile's – turtle's) eggs were in the sand.

Answers

1- brown	2- bad	3- soft	4- north
5- turtle's			

9 Write T (True) or F (False):

1. Ras Hankorab beach is a good place for the turtle. ( )
2. Gazelles can run quickly on the soft sand. ( )
3. Jubari's hooves were going into ground. ( )

Answers

1- T	2- F	3- T

10 Answer the following questions:

From page 97 to 98

1. Which animal did Jubari meet in the south?
   - ▶ In the south, Jubari met a Nubian ibex.
2. Which animal could reach the top of the mountain?
   - ▶ A Nubian ibex could reach the top of the mountain.
3. Where is the ibex's home?
   - ▶ Gebel Elba is the ibex's home.
4. Why couldn't Jubari reach the top of the mountain?
   - ▶ Because it is very steep for his legs.
5. What did the Nubian ibex see to the west?
   - ▶ The Nubian ibex saw a very big lake to the west.

11 Choose the correct answer:

1. (The turtle - The ibex - The gazelle) could reach the top of the mountain.
2. There is a big lake to the (west - east - north).
3. Gebel Elba is a good place for (gazelles - ibexes - turtles).
4. The (turtle - gazelle - ibex) gets tired while climbing the mountain.

Answers

1- The ibex	2- west	3- ibexes	4- gazelle

12 Write T (True) or F (False):

1. Jubari gazelle could reach the top of the mountain. ( )
2. Gebel Elba is the turtle's home. ( )
3. The ibex saw a very big lake to the east. ( )

Answers

1- F	2- F	3- T

13 Answer the following questions:

From page 99 to 100

1. What did Jubari find in Lake Nasser?
   - ▶ Jubari found a crocodile.
2. What did the crocodile want to do? Why?
   - ▶ It wanted to eat Jubari because he was hungry.
3. What did Jubari do when the crocodile said "I am hungry"?
   - ▶ Jubari ran and ran because his mother taught him not to stay near animals with big teeth.
4. Where did Jubari find Lake Nasser?
   - ▶ Jubari found Lake Nasser in the west.

14 Choose the correct answer:

1. A crocodile is an animal with (tiny teeth - big teeth - small teeth).
2. Lake Nasser is the (turtle's - gazelle's - crocodile's) home.
3. The crocodile wanted to (help - eat - thank) Jubari.

Answers

1- big teeth	2- crocodile's	3- eat

15 Write T (True) or F (False):

1. Lake Nasser is a man-made lake. ( )
2. Lake Nasser is an important resource for people. ( )
3. Lake Nasser is Jubari's home. ( )
4. The crocodile wanted to help Jubari in finding Wadi el Gazelles. ( )
5. Crocodiles are animals with small teeth. ( )
6. The dead tree in Lake Nasser was a mangrove tree. ( )

Answers

1- T	2- T	3- F	4- F	5- F	6- F

16 Answer the following questions:

From page 101 to 103

1. Describe Jubari.
   - Jubari is brave and curious.
2. Did Jubari find the Wadi of the Gazelles?
   - No, he didn't.
3. Did Jubari like the places he found?
   - Not all of them, the mangroves were too salty, the beach was too sandy.

   The mountains were too steep. And there weren't many acacia trees.
4. What is the moral lesson in the story?
   - Animals are happiest in the ecosystem they are born in.

17 Choose the correct answer:

1. The mangroves were too (salty - sandy - steep).
2. The beach was too (salty - sandy - steep).
3. The mountains were too (salty - sandy - steep).
4. Wadi el Gemal has (soft sand - much salt - acacia trees).
5. Wadi el Gemal is perfect for (turtles - crocodile - gazelles).

Answers

1- salty	2- sandy	3- steep	4- acacia trees	5- gazelles

18 Write T (True) or F (False):

1. Jubari found Wadi el Gazelles. ( )
2. Jubari is a brave and curious son. ( )
3. The desert is perfect for gazelles to run and run. ( )

Answers

1- F	2- T	3- T



Revision on Units Connect Plus (5)



1 Choose the correct word(s): Vocabulary

1. The (rainforest – ecosystem – species) is all the animals and plants in an area. It can be small or big.
2. Plants and animals are (living things – non-living things – humans).
3. Insects, plants and animals are different (species – rocks – diseases).
4. In an ecosystem, all animals and plants need each other to (protect – leave – survive).
5. The different species in an ecosystem make a (national park – community – pond).
6. Water, rocks and soil are (living things – non-living things – species).
7. Bees make a special (sugar – sweets – honey) from the mangrove flowers.
8. In an ecosystem plants, animals and all (interact – protect – fight) with each other to survive.
9. Plants need (dirty water – salt water – fresh water) to grow.
10. In the (desert – forest – rainforest) ecosystem, plants and animals don't need a lot of water.
11. Bees carry (flowers – pollen – leaves) from one plant or tree to another and that helps them to make seeds.
12. Without (rain – wind – snow), grass can't grow.
13. He is (ill – healthy – unhealthy) because he loves sports and he eats good food.
14. When you walk, run, swim, or cycle, you make your (stomach – head – heart) work harder.
15. Humans and plants need (sunlight – blood – soil).
16. Veins and arteries carry (blood – water – juice) around your body.

17. Your heart (hit – run – beat) over 100, 00 times a day.

18. She's a (photographer – painter – artist). She takes nice photos.

19. We shouldn't (grow – cut – plant) down trees.

20. Lots of different kinds of fish live in the (grassland – marine – forest) ecosystem.

2 Choose the correct word(s): Structures

1. Hazem is Adam's cousin (where – who – which) lives in the Sinai Peninsula.
2. They live in a place (who – where – which) is near Mount Sinai.
3. They visited a wadi (where – who – which) they saw some animals.
4. A wadi is a dry place in the desert (which – where – who) fills with water when it rains.
5. They met a man (where – which – who) works in a garden.
6. He showed them his garden (where – who – which) he grows medicinal plants.
7. I think the school concert will be a big (successful – success).
8. Tarek is helping his little brother. He is very (patience – patient) with him.
9. The colorful birds in that tree are very (beautiful – beauty).
10. The photographer wasn't (luck – lucky) this morning. She didn't see a lion.
11. Miss Manal has much (patience – patient). We all like her.
12. It's bad (luck – lucky) to lose the last match.
13. Wael likes fish, (and – but – so) he doesn't like lamb.
14. Talia eats dates, pomegranates, (because – so– and) figs.
15. I went to the library (but – so - because) I needed a book.
16. Lara wants to keep her heart healthy, (because – but – so) she does exercise.
17. Walid and Shady went to the park (and – but – because) they played tennis.
18. Mona likes to play tennis, (so – because – but) he doesn't like to play

chess.

19. Walid and Shady went to the park (and – but – because) flew their kites.

20. If it doesn't rain, the grass (will – can – won't) grow.

21. Some rabbits (won't – might – can't) be dead because there isn't any rain.

22. If rabbits don't find grass, they (won't – can't – will) be hungry

23. If it doesn't rain, animals (must – won't – can't) move to a different place.

24. We (can – can't – will) stay here without food!

25. Lions (can – can't – might) catch rabbits for food. It's easy for them.

3 Circle the correct word(s):

1. We visited our cousins (which – who) live in Port Said.
2. Date palms are trees (which – where) grow in the desert.
3. I know a woman (who – which) teaches at the university.
4. A kingfisher is a bird (which – where) lives in mangrove trees.
5. A wetland is a place (which – where) you can see lots of birds.
6. Grassland is an area (where – who) a lot of animals live.

4 Complete the sentences with the correct word from the box:

who – which – where

1. The Sinai Peninsula is a place .... red foxes live.
2. Is Mona the girl .... always draws pictures of animals?
3. There are many medicinal plants .... grow in the desert.
4. A wadi is a place .... desert animals look for food.
5. Ashraf is my friend .... lives near the Red Sea.
6. Summer is the season .... comes after spring.

Unit 1 Test 1



Total
30

1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (4Ms)

Nabq is a very big National Park in South Sinai. Along the coast here, there are 4.8 kilometers of mangrove forest, which is the largest in the Red Sea. Mangrove forests are so important for the marine ecosystem. Mangrove trees protect the non-living things and the living things in the marine ecosystem. Mangrove trees help us with global warming.

1. Nabq is a very big National (garden – park – zoo – coast) in South Sinai.
2. Nabq is along the coast of the (Red Sea – Mediterranean Sea – Nile – Lake Nasser).
3. Mangrove trees are so important for the (mountain – desert – river – marine) ecosystem.
4. Mangrove trees help us with global (parks – ecosystems – warming – living things) for many animals.

2 Listen and complete: (4Ms)

Seleem is a healthy boy. He loves sports. He plays tennis, football, and basketball. He eats healthy food like fruit, vegetables, and rice. He doesn't eat a lot of chocolate because he knows that this food isn't very healthy. In the evening, he wants to relax, so he reads a book. He does a lot of exercise. He keeps his heart healthy. It's important to do exercise.

1. Seleem is a .... boy.
2. He plays tennis, football, and ....
3. He eats healthy food like fruit, ..., and rice.
4. It's important to do ....

ملحوظة هامة: عند إجابة سؤال الاستماع يجب على الطفل قراءة الأسئلة جميعها جيدًا قبل الاستماع ثم يقوم بالإجابة أثناء سماع النص.
يقوم المُعلم أو ولي الأمر بمسح الكود الموجود للاستماع إلى نص الاستماع أو يقوم المُعلم أو ولي الأمر بالجلوس مقابل الطفل وقراءة النص له ويقوم الطفل بالإجابة أثناء الاستماع.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4Ms)

oxygen – Arteries – carbon dioxide – blood – nutrients

In some ways, humans are similar to plants. Think about our circulatory system. Instead of water, our veins and arteries carry ______ around our bodies. ______ move blood away from our heart. Veins carry blood to it. The ______ and oxygen that we need are in our blood. But we don't use ______ like plants do.

4 Read the following text and then answer the questions below: (4Ms)

Goha used to go to the village market to sell donkeys. One day, on his way home with his donkeys, he felt tired. He decided to ride one of his donkeys. He counted the donkeys but there were only nine. He got off his donkey and counted them again. This time there were ten. He got back on his donkey and counted them once more. He was surprised. There were only nine. He decided to get off his donkey. He preferred to walk with ten donkeys rather than ride with nine.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Goha was on his way (to the market – to the barn – home).
2. At last, Goha (walked – rode his donkey – slept).

B Answer these questions:

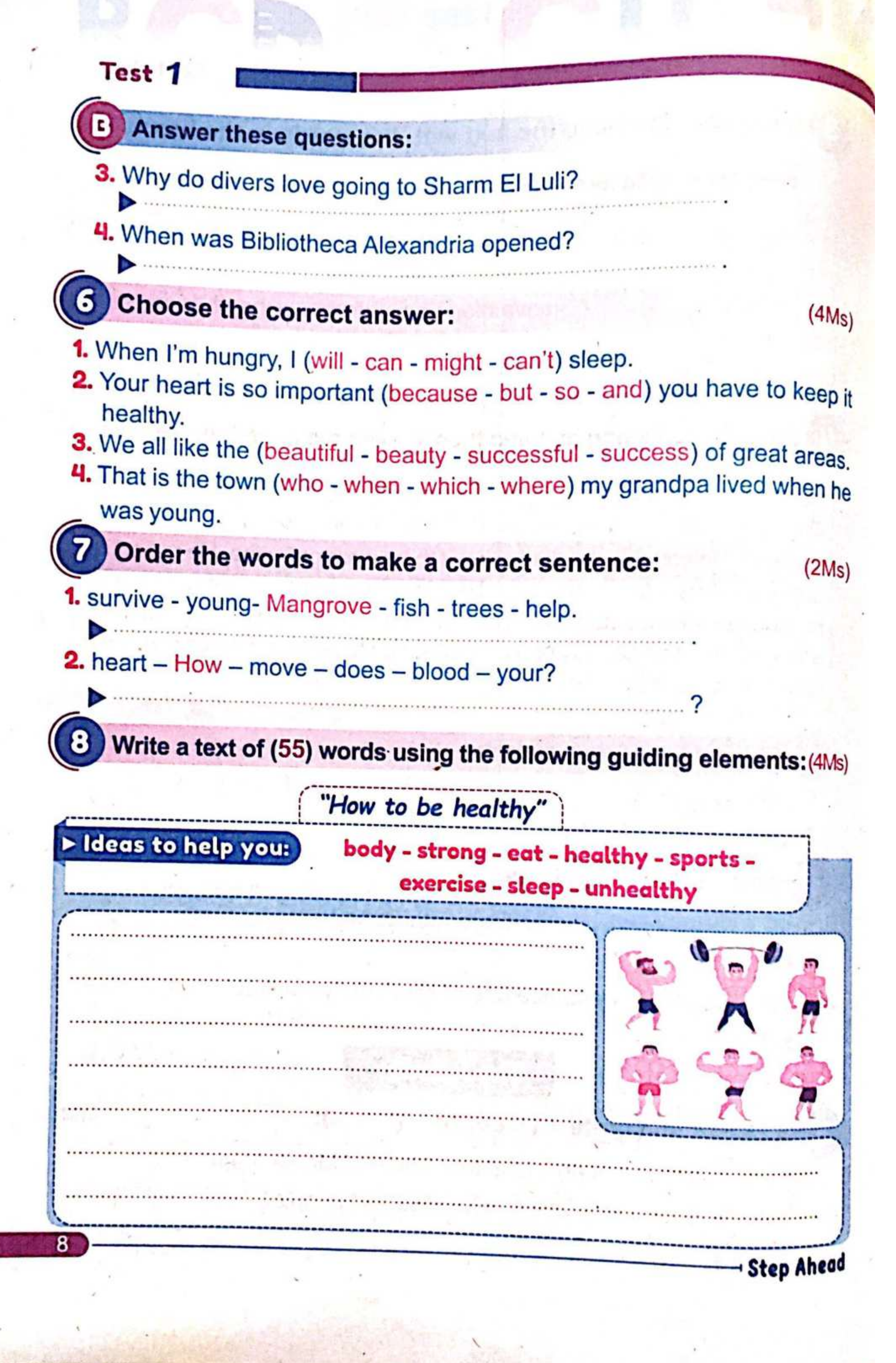
3. How many donkeys were there with Goha?
▶ ....

4. Why did he decide to ride one of his donkeys at first?
▶ ....

The Reader

5 A- Read and write T (True) or F (False): (4Ms)

1. Sharm El Luli beach is 60 kilometers South of Marsa Alam. (   )
2. Institute for Sound and Vision helps disabled people. (   )



5 Answer these questions:

3. Why do divers love going to Sharm El Luli?
▶ ....

4. When was Bibliotheca Alexandria opened?
▶ ....

6 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. When I'm hungry, I (will - can - might - can't) sleep.
2. Your heart is so important (because - but - so - and) you have to keep it healthy.
3. We all like the (beautiful - beauty - successful - success) of great areas.
4. That is the town (who - when - which - where) my grandpa lived when he was young.

7 Order the words to make a correct sentence: (2Ms)

1. survive - young- Mangrove - fish - trees - help.
▶ ....

2. heart – How – move – does – blood – your?
▶ .... ?

8 Write a text of (55) words using the following guiding elements: (4Ms)

"How to be healthy"

▶ Ideas to help you: body - strong - eat - healthy - sports - exercise - sleep - unhealthy

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



1 Choose the correct word(s): Vocabulary

1. The (waterfall – earthquake – volcano) is very dangerous when it erupts.
2. The (canyon – crater – dune) is a deep narrow place where a river runs between tall rocks.
3. The (valley – dune – wetland) is an area of land that is often covered by water.
4. The (crater – canyon – coast) is the large round hole in the middle of a volcano.
5. When a volcano (erodes – erupts – forms), it sends out smoke and fire.
6. The (wetland – dune – valley) is a low area of land between two mountains.
7. The (century – month – season) is one hundred years.
8. (Builders – Engineers – Archaeologists) study things from the past.
9. The (canyon – dune – valley) is a hill made of sand shaped by wind.
10. The Sphinx is a (natural – man-made – normal) monument.
11. (Scientists – Archaeologists – Storm-chasers) are people who travel to places where extreme weather is forecast.
12. (Lava – Fire – Smoke) is hot liquid rock that comes out of volcanoes.
13. The (root – rock – soil) is the top part of the earth in which plants grow.
14. (Mud flow – Ash – Lava) is something soft and gray that you find when a fire stops burning.
15. A river (erupted – eroded – found) a hole in the sandstone and has formed the arch.
16. The (flame – smoke – lava) is the burning gas that you see in a fire.
17. To (shine – light – switch) is to make something start burning.
18. (Soil – Mud flow – Ash) is soft wet material that moves down mountains. ecosystem.

2 Choose the correct word(s): Structures

1. Adel (fall – fell – fallen) off his bicycle yesterday.
2. I have (learn – learned – learning) how to prepare my meal myself.
3. He didn't (break – broke – breaks) the window yesterday.
4. Has your sister ever (make – makes – made) a cake for you?
5. Where did your uncle (travel – traveled – traveling) last week?
6. They have (do – done – did) their homework already.
7. I (give – gave – gives) my friend a present on his birthday last week.
8. He (didn't – doesn't – hasn't) told me anything.
9. The cat didn't (catch – caught – catches) the mouse.
10. She has (never – ever – just) gone to Luxor and Aswan. She hopes to go one day.
11. What did you (say – said – says) to your mother when you came late?
12. My uncle (has traveled – traveled – have traveled) a week ago.
13. They (go – are going – went) to the park yesterday.
14. He has (swim – swam – swum) in the Red Sea.
15. Soha (cleans – cleaned – will clean) her room last evening.
16. Has Salwa (wash – washed – washing) the dishes?
17. I didn't (write – writes – wrote) a letter to my friend yesterday.
18. He (have lived – has lived – lived) in Alexandria for ten years.
19. They (lives – lived – are living) in Alexandria five years ago.
20. He (bought – have bought – has bought) a new school bag last month.
21. What did she (buys – buy – bought) yesterday?
22. We (went – has gone – have gone) to Alexandria last summer.
23. Have you (already – ever – never) sailed a boat in the Nile?
24. We all (watches – watch – watched) the match last evening.
25. Mona (helps – helped – helping) her mother last Friday.
26. He has (ever – never – already) driven a car. It's the first time.
27. Kamal was (exciting – excited) about his trip to the USA.
28. The trip to the USA was very (exciting – excited).

Unit 2 Test 2



1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (4Ms)



Rainbow Bridge is one of the largest natural arches in the world. It is also 200 million years old. It is on Lake Powell in Utah, USA. It is 88 meters tall and it is made of red and brown sandstone. A river eroded a hole in the sandstone and has formed the arch over many, many years.

1. Rainbow Bridge is one of the largest natural (circles – arches – triangles – squares) in the world.
2. It is also 200 (hundred – thousand – million centuries) years old.
3. It is (eighty five – eighty six – eighty seven – eighty eight) meters tall.
4. A river (eroded – erupted – painted – destroyed) a hole in the sandstone and has formed the arch.

2 Listen and complete: (4Ms)



Mount Kilimanjaro is made of three volcanoes. Scientists think that it hasn't erupted for 360,000 years. Mount Kilimanjaro is the tallest mountain in Africa, at 5,895 meters. Every year, about 25,000 people climb it, but it is difficult. The mountain is very big and has lots of different ecosystems. It starts in the hot grassland. Farther up, there are tropical rainforests, and at the top there is snow and ice.

1. Mount Kilimanjaro is made of three ....
2. Mount Kilimanjaro is the .... mountain in Africa, at 5,895 meters.
3. The mountain is very big and has lots of different ....
4. Farther up, there are tropical ....

ملحوظة هامة: عند إجابة سؤال الاستماع يجب على الطفل قراءة الأسئلة جميعها جيدًا قبل الاستماع ثم يقوم بالإجابة أثناء سماع النص.

☆ يقوم المُعلم أو ولي الأمر بمسح الكود الموجود للاستماع إلى نص الاستماع أو يقوم المُعلم أو ولي الأمر بالجلوس مقابل الطفل وقراءة النص له ويقوم الطفل بالإجابة أثناء الاستماع.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4Ms)

National – Canopy – Park – visitors – rainforest

Visitors to Rwanda can have an amazing .... adventure on The .... Walk in Nyungwe .... Park. The bridge was built in 2010. It's 160 meters long and 74 meters above the ground. It is in the highest part of the trees, so .... can see monkeys and birds.

4 Read the following text and then answer the questions below: (4Ms)

Egypt is a beautiful Arab counrty in the northeast of Africa. The first language in Egypt is Arabic. It is famous for its fine weather all the year round. It's also famous for its monuments in Luxor and Aswan, the Egyptian Museum, the pyramids and the Sphinx. The River Nile, the longest river in the world runs through it. Most of the Egyptians live in the Nile Valley because its soil is very rich. That's why the framers are able to grow many crops.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The first language in Egypt is (Egyptian – Arabic – English).
2. Most Egyptian live in the (oases – desert – Nile Valley).

B Answer these questions:

3. Where is Egypt?
   ▶ ....
4. What's Egypt famous for?
   ▶ ....

The Reader

5 A- Read and write T (True) or F (False): (4Ms)

1. The islands of Hawaii are part of the USA. (   )
2. Bibliotheca Alexandria is by the Red Sea. (   )

B Answer these questions:

3. How was the Giant's Causeway formed?
▶ ....

4. Why was Beijing National Stadium built?
▶ ....

6 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. (Has – have – Did – Are) you ever been abroad?
2. They didn't (visit – visits – visiting – visited) us yesterday.
3. Mother has (write – writes – wrote – written) a shopping list.
4. My brother (found – has found – have found – finds) a job last year.

7 Order the words to make a correct sentence: (2Ms)

1. the pyramids - of - come - People - Giza - to visit.
▶ ....

2. kind of - does - What - take - photos - Kamal?
▶ .... ?

8 Write a text of (55) words using the following guiding elements: (4Ms)

"Volcanoes"

▶ Ideas to help you: volcanoes – dangerous – under – surface – hot – rocks – liquid – magma – erupts – smoke – dust – lava – damage

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



1 Choose the correct word(s): Vocabulary

1. He was digging a (wall – hole – stone) there and found some old bones.
2. All the bones in your body is your (shoulders – neck – skeleton).
3. We go to the (museum – club – park) to see very old things from the past.
4. Let's take a (fork – knife – shovel) to dig a hole there.
5. (Copper – Flax – Linen) is a metal.
6. This land is (poor – dry – fertile). It's very good for growing crops.
7. My shirt is made of (papyrus – metal – linen).
8. Agriculture was a very important part of the (economy – Nile – buildings) of ancient Egypt.
9. He is (deaf – dumb – blind). He can't see.
10. Smell this plant, it has a strange (texture – odor – mass).
11. This wood is (rough – comfortable – soft). It's not smooth.
12. Her blouse is made of linen. It has soft (odor – mass – texture).
13. If you put a rock in water, it would (float – sink – fly).
14. I like science because I like doing science (experiments – sums – labs).
15. A / An (lake – oasis – mountain) is a place in the desert with water.
16. Damieta is a city on the Mediterranean (beach coast bank) of Egypt.
17. Gold and coal are raw (colors – shapes – materials).
18. Coal and oil are (solar energy – fossil fuels – renewable energy).
19. We take raw materials out of (mines – holes – caves).
20. (Gas – Metal – Copper) doesn't have a fixed shape.
21. Orange juice is a (solid – gas – liquid).
22. When you (melt – freeze – cool) ice, it turns to a liquid.
23. Wood is a (liquid – gas – solid).
24. When you (boil – melt – freeze) water, it turns to a gas.
25. Wing energy is (renewable – non-renewable).
26. When you (melt – boil – freeze) water, it turns to ice.
27. Coal is (renewable – non-renewable).
28. Steam is a (solid – liquid – gas).

2 Choose the correct word(s): Structures

1. If you didn't do your homework, your teacher (will be – would be – was) angry.
2. If he (went – goes – doesn't go) to bed very late, he would be tired tomorrow.
3. If we (visit – don't visit – visited) the zoo, we would see lots of animals.
4. If he (has – doesn't have – have) enough money, he will buy a new bike.
5. If she looked in the box, she (will see – would see – saw) her prize.
6. How (will – would – are) you feel if you got lost?
7. If she (get – gets – doesn't get) up early tomorrow morning, she'll make breakfast for her mom and dad.
8. He (was – were – would) feel happy if he met a famous player.
9. Hala (will help – would help – helps) with the shopping if mom goes to the supermarket tomorrow.
10. What would she (buy – buys – bought) if she had a lot of money?
11. If Sally had enough money, she (will – would – won't) buy a new bike.
12. If Ramy has lots of homework tonight, he (doesn't watch – will watch – won't watch) TV.
13. Will Heba (stay – stays – doesn't stay) at home if it's warm and sunny?
14. If I had a parrot, I'd (teach – taught – teaching) it to talk.
15. He told his friend that he (loves – love – loved) cycling.
16. They said that they (can – will – could) see the plane.
17. He said he (hopes – hoped – hoping) to be a pilot.
18. She said that she (doesn't – didn't – hadn't) want any biscuits.
19. Her grandma told her that she (has – had – have) a rocking horse when she was young.
20. Amr said that he (visit – visits – visited) his grandpa on Friday.
21. They said that there (was – were – are) lots of people in the museum.
22. He said that he (plays – played – is playing) football with his friends after school.
23. Omar said that he (watched – watches – is watching) the new film.
24. Mai told her friend she (is doing – has done – did) her homework in the afternoon.
25. They said that they (go – have gone – went) swimming on Friday.

26. She said that the film (starts – started – is starting) late at night.

27. David said he (goes – is going – went) to the cinema every week.

28. Mohamed said he (didn't – doesn't – wasn't) like basketball.

Unit 3 Test 3



1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (4Ms)

Ancient Egypt was very successful because it had good natural resources. Copper was very important metal in ancient Egypt. It was easy to bend, and people used it to make tools, cooking pots, and knives, as well as jewelry. They get it from mines. We can see a lot of these objects today in Egyptian museums.

1. Ancient Egypt was very successful because it had good natural (buildings – pyramids – temples – resources).
2. Copper was very important (jewelry – metal – gas – stone) in ancient Egypt.
3. Copper was easy to (bend – paint – light – eat).
4. We can see a lot of these objects today in Egyptian (temples – beaches – museums – hotels).

2 Listen and complete: (4Ms)

Stones and rocks were a useful natural resource in ancient Egypt. Because there were lots of rocks such as limestone, the ancient Egyptians could build the pyramids, and many other big and important buildings and temples. Boats on the Nile transported some of the stones across Egypt to the important cities.

1. .... and rocks were a useful natural resource in ancient Egypt.
2. There were lots of rocks such as ....
3. Egyptians could build the .... and many other big buildings.
4. Boats on the Nile .... some of the stones across Egypt to the important cities.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4Ms)

linen – clothes – flax – rope – ancient

Do any of you know what .... is? This tall plant has blue flowers. The plant turns yellow after the flowers die. Flax was important in .... Egypt. People used it to make .... for clothes, as well as for strong ....

4 Read the following text and then answer the questions below: (4Ms)

Every winter, thousands of people from every part of Europe, America and Asia come to spend their holidays in our great country, Egypt. They are tourists who come to enjoy the fine weather and sunshine of Egypt when it is very cold in their countries. They like to visit Luxor and Aswan. They like to see the ancient treasures of Egypt, so they like to visit the Egyptian Museum. They aslo visit the Pyramids and the Sphinx in Giza. Before they return home, they like to go to Khan El Khalili to buy some souvenirs.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Most tourists usually visit Egypt in (summer – spring – winte).
2. Tourists who come to Egypt are of (one continent – two continents – all over the world).

B Answer these questions:

3. Why do tourists come to Egypt?
   ▶ ....
4. What do tourists buy at Khan El Khalili?
   ▶ ....

The Reader

5 A- Read and write T (True) or F (False): (4Ms)

1. Jubari was born in Wadi el Gemal in Egypt's Eastern desert. (   )

2. The dugong lives in the mango tree. ( )

B Answer these questions:

3. What did Subira teach Jubari?
▶ ....

4. What is Jubari going to look for?
▶ ....

6 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. If I (see – sees – saw) a bear, I'd run away.
2. He said that the car (needs – needed – needing) some petrol.
3. Mom (would – will – is) be happy if we help her.
4. She said that it (is – was – has) very cold.

7 Order the words to make a correct sentence: (2Ms)

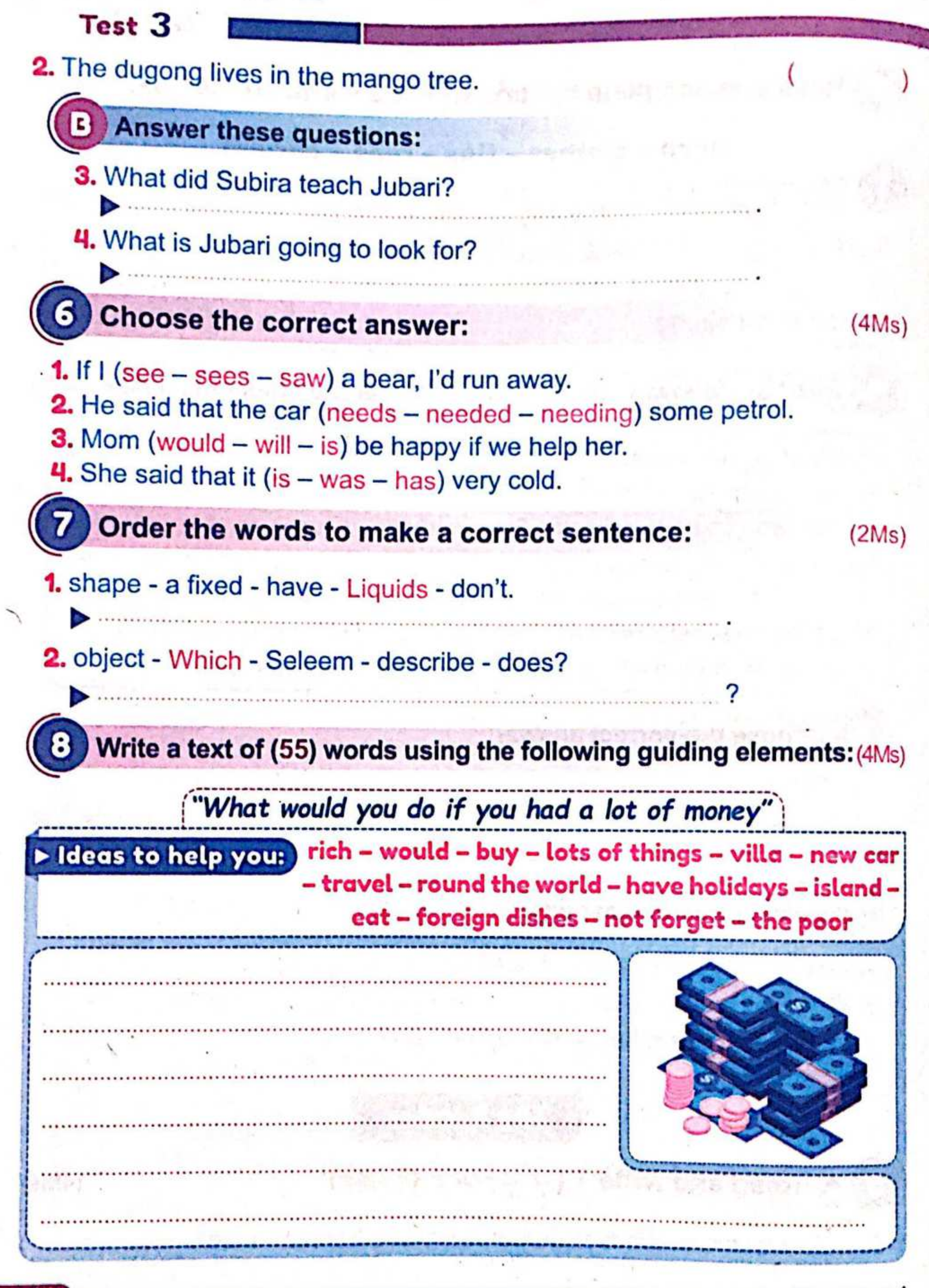
1. shape - a fixed - have - Liquids - don't.
▶ ....

2. object - Which - Seleem - describe - does?
▶ ....?

8 Write a text of (55) words using the following guiding elements: (4Ms)

"What would you do if you had a lot of money"

▶ Ideas to help you: rich – would – buy – lots of things – villa – new car – travel – round the world – have holidays – island – eat – foreign dishes – not forget – the poor



....
....
....
....
....
....

Unit 4 Revision

1 Choose the correct word(s): Vocabulary

1. We push the (brakes – pedals – wheels) to make the bike move.
2. When you want to stop the bike, use the (brakes – pedals – wheels).
3. We us a (pull – push) force to pick up a bag on the ground.
4. We use a (pull – push) force to move the pedals of the bike.
5. The bike has one front (wheel – pedal – bell) and another back one.
6. (Air resistance – Gravity – Friction) keeps people from flying up into space.
7. When you press on a (spring – wood – metal) with your fingers, it gets smaller.
8. (Tension – Friction – Air resistance) is a pull force.
9. (Pilots – Astronauts – Drivers) travel into space.
10. My grandparents have ten (sons – daughters – grandchildren). I'm one of them.
11. Nurses help (engineers – doctors – teachers) in hospitals.
12. The (pilot – scientist – astronaut) works in an airport.
13. The (teacher – engineer – builder) designs roads and bridges.
14. (Scientists – Doctors – Astronauts) invent very useful things for us.
15. The bird has two (feathers – wings – tails).
16. The (builder – architect – pilot) designs buildings.
17. Planes take off and (laugh – land – lay) in an airport.
18. Birds have lots of (feathers – wings – heads).
19. You can fall on ice because there is less (air assistance – friction – tension) than on the path.
20. (Push force – Falling – Air resistance) makes an object move more slowly.

2 Choose the correct word(s): Structures

1. She goes shopping on Thursday, (don't – doesn't – didn't) she?
2. You can do it yourself, (won't – couldn't – can't) you?
3. They won't travel next week, (can – won't – will) they?
4. They were climbing a high mountain, (were not – weren't – were) they?
5. He was at the cinema yesterday, (was not – was – wasn't) he?
6. She isn't good at drawing, (is – isn't – is not) she?
7. These necklaces are beautiful, (are – aren't – don't) they?
8. We can't take photos in here, (can't – will – can) we?
9. You (could – can't – couldn't) find your toy, couldn't you?
10. They're shopping, (are we – aren't they – aren't you)?
11. Dad is very funny, (is – was – isn't) he?
12. They can't swim, (can they – can we – can't they)?
13. It wasn't very cold yesterday, (was – wasn't – isn't) it?
14. Jana is in the karate club with you, (isn't Jana – is she – isn't she)?
15. You can speak English, (don't – can't – haven't) you?
16. This (is – doesn't – isn't) your school bag, isn't it?
17. He went to the club with me, (did he – didn't he – wasn't he)?
18. Basil likes fish, (isn't he – doesn't he – does he)?
19. She has a nice blue dress, (doesn't she – has she – hasn't she)?
20. Grandma (visited – was visited – didn't visit) us yesterday, didn't she?
21. Adel (plays – played – doesn't play) football with his friends, doesn't he?
22. We have much homework today, (haven't we – aren't we – don't we)?
23. Hani had some new CDs yesterday, (didn't he – hadn't he – wasn't he)?
24. She (helps – doesn't help – didn't help) her mom, does she?
25. They usually meet at the club on Friday, (don't they – do not they – aren't they)?

Unit 4 Test 4

Total
30

1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (4Ms)



I'm Karim. I decided I wanted to be a pilot when I went to an airplane festival with my mom and dad. We saw lots of different planes flying in the sky, and some of them did amazing moves. It looked amazing. There was also a small museum, and I learned how air resistance helps the planes to stay in the air.

1. Karim wanted to be a (driver – sailor – astronaut – pilot).
2. He went to a / an (airplane – ship – boat – car) festival with my mom and dad.
3. Some of the planes did amazing (rides – tours – moves – trips).
4. I learned how air (pollution – resistance – conditions – weather) helps the planes to stay in the air.

2 Listen and complete: (4Ms)



You use force to get the bike to move by pushing the pedals. You also use force to stop the bike, by using the brakes. That slows down or stops the wheels. If you want to increase your speed, push the pedals more quickly. You'll need to cycle harder when you go up that hill. When you go down the hill, the bike is going to go faster, so you'll need to use the brakes.

1. You use .... to get the bike to move by pushing the pedals.
2. You also use force to stop the bike, by using the ....
3. If you want to increase your speed, push the .... more quickly.
4. When you go down the hill, the bike is going to go ....

ملحوظة هامة: عند إجابة سؤال الاستماع يجب على الطفل قراءة الأسئلة جميعها جيدًا قبل الاستماع ثم يقوم بالإجابة أثناء سماع النص.
☆ يقوم المُعلم أو ولي الأمر بمسح الكود الموجود للاستماع إلى نص الاستماع أو يقوم المُعلم أو ولي الأمر بالجلوس مقابل الطفل وقراءة النص له ويقوم الطفل بالإجابة أثناء الاستماع.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4Ms)

invented – famous – flight – wings – history

The .... of Arabs is full of great inventors and discoverers. Abbas Ibn Firnas was an important person who .... many things, including water clocks. Abbas Ibn Firnas became very .... because he was probably the first person ever to fly using ....

4 Read the following text and then answer the questions below: (4Ms)

Yesterday, Mohamed went to the airport. His pen friend, Bell, was coming from London. It was Bell's first visit to Egypt. Each of them had a photo of the other. So, they could know each other. The plane was an hour late and the passengers on it were many. Mohamed looked at their faces, but Bell was not there. Mohamed was very sad. At last, he went home. There, he had a great surprise when he saw Bell waiting for him. "How were you able to come here by yourself?" Mohamed asked. Bell said with a smile, "I gave your address to the taxi driver."

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Bell came to Egypt by (plane – train – ship).
2. Mohamed met Bell at (the airport – Mohamed's home – the street).

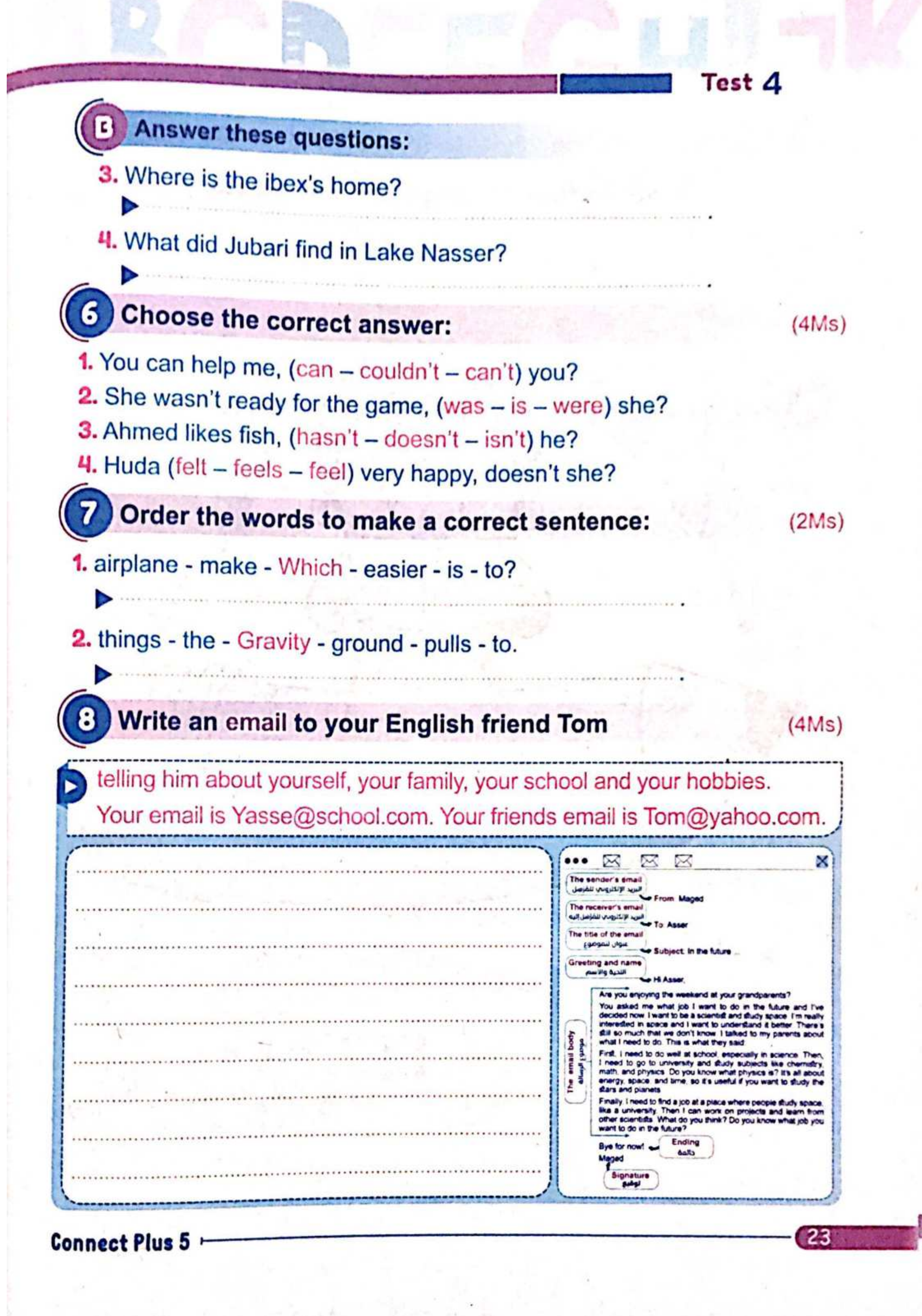
B Answer these questions:

3. What's Bell's nationality?
▶ ....
4. What does the underlined word "There" refer to?
▶ ....

The Reader

5 A- Read and write T (True) or F (False): (4Ms)

1. Jubari found Wadi el Gazelles. (   )
2. The desert is perfect for gazelles to run and run. (   )



B Answer these questions:

3. Where is the ibex's home?

▶ ....

4. What did Jubari find in Lake Nasser?

▶ ....

6 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. You can help me, (can – couldn't – can't) you?
2. She wasn't ready for the game, (was – is – were) she?
3. Ahmed likes fish, (hasn't – doesn't – isn't) he?
4. Huda (felt – feels – feel) very happy, doesn't she?

7 Order the words to make a correct sentence: (2Ms)

1. airplane - make - Which - easier - is - to?

▶ ....

2. things - the - Gravity - ground - pulls - to.

▶ ....

8 Write an email to your English friend Tom (4Ms)

telling him about yourself, your family, your school and your hobbies.
Your email is Yasse@school.com. Your friends email is Tom@yahoo.com.

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

The sender's email البريد الإلكتروني للمرسل
From: Maged
The receiver's email البريد الإلكتروني للمرسل إليه
To: Asser
The title of the email عنوان الموضوع
Subject: In the future
Greeting and name التحية والاسم
Hi Asser,

The email body موضوع الرسالة

Are you enjoying the weekend at your grandparents?

You asked me what job I want to do in the future and I've decided now. I want to be a scientist and study space. I'm really interested in space and I want to understand it better. There's still so much that we don't know. I talked to my parents about what I need to do. This is what they said.

First, I need to do well at school, especially in science. Then, I need to go to university and study subjects like chemistry, math, and physics. Do you know what physics is? It's all about energy, space, and time, so it's useful if you want to study the stars and planets.

Finally, I need to find a job at a place where people study space, like a university. Then I can work on projects and learn from other scientists. What do you think? Do you know what job you want to do in the future?

Ending خاتمة
Bye for now!
Maged
Signature توقيع


Part 2
Revision Tests

Revision Test 1

Total 30



1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (4Ms)

My name is Jana. When I grow up, I'd love to be an engineer like my Uncle Wael. His job sounds really interesting. Engineers help make things such as skateboards! Uncle Wael says that you need to understand science to do this job. For example, you need to know how friction and different forces affect how skateboards move.

1. Jana wants to be a/an (doctor – engineer – astronaut – pilot).
2. Uncle Wael's job sounds really (interesting – boring – difficult – hard).
3. Uncle Wael says that you need to understand (math – history – geography – science) to do this job.
4. You need to know how (tension – pull – friction – push) and different forces affect how skateboards move.



2 Listen and complete: (4Ms)

An ecosystem is all the animals and plants in an area. In an ecosystem, living things such as plants and animals interact with non-living things such as water, rocks, and soil. The different species in an ecosystem make a community, and they all need each other to survive.

1. An .... is all the animals and plants in an area.
2. In an ecosystem, living things interact with ....
3. The different species in an ecosystem make a ....
4. The different species need each other to ....

ملحوظة هامة: عند إجابة سؤال الاستماع يجب على الطفل قراءة الأسئلة جميعها جيدًا قبل الاستماع ثم يقوم بالإجابة أثناء سماع النص.

☆ يقوم المُعلم أو ولي الأمر بمسح الكود الموجود للاستماع إلى نص الاستماع أو يقوم المُعلم أو ولي الأمر بالجلوس مقابل الطفل وقراءة النص له ويقوم الطفل بالإجابة أثناء الاستماع.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4Ms)

eroded – Bridge – sandstone – arches – erupted

Rainbow .... is one of the largest natural .... in the world. It is also 200 million years old. It is on Lake Powell in Utah, USA. It is 88 meters tall and it is made of red and brown .... A river .... a hole in the sandstone and has formed the arch over many, many years.

4 Read the following text and then answer the questions below: (4Ms)

Learning English is very important for us. English is an interesting language. It is spoken in many countries. So, my teacher always says, "You must learn English. It is not difficult, but if you don't use it or listen to those who speak it, you will forget it."
English language gives us the chance to read English books and know how other people think and live. If you go to a foreign country, you will need English for talking to people there. English language gives us better chances to get good jobs.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. English is a (boring – useful – difficult) language.
2. To get a good (book – chance – job), you should learn English.

B Answer these questions:

3. Why is English important?
   ▶ ....
4. What should you do to be good at English?
   ▶ ....

The Reader **Jubari searches for home**

5 A- Read and write T (True) or F (False): (4Ms)

1. Jubari is a brave and curious son. (   )
2. Did Jubari find the Wadi of the Gazelles? (   )

B Answer these questions:

3. What did Jubari find in Lake Nasser?
   ▶ ....
4. Gebel Elba is the turtle's home.
   ▶ ....

6 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. Hani likes tennis, (and – so – but – because) he's not good at playing it.
2. This is a lizard (which – where – when – who) lives in the Egyptian desert.
3. Aunt Eman (have made – has made – make – is make) us a delicious cake.
4. If he (go – goes – went – will go) to the museum, he'll see really big dinosaur skeletons.

7 Order the words to make a correct sentence: (2Ms)

1. continent – The – an amazing – African – place – is.
   ▶ ....
2. shape – a – fixed – have – Liquids – don't.
   ▶ ....

8 Write a text of (55) words using the following guiding elements: (4Ms)

"My favorite job"

▶ **Ideas to help you:**
- ❑ What's the job?
- ❑ Where will you work?
- ❑ How is it useful?
- ❑ Why do you like it?

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Revision Test 2



Total
30

1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (4Ms)

Ancient Egypt was very successful because it had good natural resources. Agriculture was a very important part of the economy of ancient Egypt. The Nile flooded every year and made the soil fertile. Farmers grew lots of different crops, such as cotton and rice.

1. Ancient Egypt was very successful because it had good natural (rivers – forests – deserts – resources).
2. (Trade – Agriculture – Fishing – Building) was a very important part of the economy of ancient Egypt.
3. The Nile (flooded – ran – dried – stopped) every year in ancient Egypt.
4. The Nile made the soil (dry – poor – fertile – small).

2 Listen and complete: (4Ms)



Kamal has been to many places with his parents. He has seen heavy snow in the mountains, floods in Sudan and amazing dust storms in the desert. He has learned a lot about the causes of extreme weather, such as global warming, and he has taken hundreds of photos.

1. Kamal has been to many places with his ....
2. He has seen heavy snow in the mountains, ... in Sudan.
3. He has learned a lot about the causes of extreme ....
4. He has seen amazing dust .... in the desert.

ملحوظة هامة: عند إجابة سؤال الاستماع يجب على الطفل قراءة الأسئلة جميعها جيدًا قبل الاستماع ثم يقوم بالإجابة أثناء سماع النص.

☆ يقوم المُعلم أو ولي الأمر بمسح الكود الموجود للاستماع إلى نص الاستماع أو يقوم المُعلم أو ولي الأمر بالجلوس مقابل الطفل وقراءة النص له ويقوم الطفل بالإجابة أثناء الاستماع.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4Ms)

erupted – volcanoes – mountain – climb – eroded

Mount Kilimanjaro is made of three .... Scientists think that it hasn't .... for 360,000 years. Mount Kilimanjaro is the tallest .... in Africa, at 5,895 meters. Every year, about 25,000 people .... it, but it is difficult. The mountain is very big and has lots of different ecosystems.

4 Read the following text and then answer the questions below: (4Ms)

Amr loves sports. His favourite sport is football. He watches football matches in clubs and on TV. Now, he practises it every day. He plays it at the school playground and at the club as well. He has big posters of football players on the walls of his room. He likes to read all the magazines on this sport. He is a good player. He is one of the best players in his school team. His team has just won an important match. The goal which Amr scored helped the team to get the golden cup last month.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. There are some (postcards – posters – presents) on Amr's bedroom walls.
2. Amr (always – sometimes – never) plays football.

B Answer these questions:

3. Where does Amr practice his favorite sport?
▶ ....
4. How often does Amr play football?
▶ ....

The Reader **Jubari searches for home**

5 A- Read and write T (True) or F (False): (4Ms)

1. Acacia trees need the gazelles. (   )
2. The ibex saw a very big lake to the east. (   )

B Answer these questions:

3. Where was Jubari born?

▶ ....

4. Why couldn't Jubari reach the top of the mountain?

▶ ....

6 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. Tamer likes sweets, (hasn't – doesn't – isn't – does) she?
2. Ola said she usually (has – have – had – having) meat for lunch.
3. When it doesn't rain, the grass (can't – might – will – can) grow.
4. The project was a great (beauty – beautiful – success – successful).

7 Order the words to make a correct sentence: (2Ms)

1. lower – float – with – a – mass – The liquids.

▶ ....

2. honey – diseases – Mangrove – fight – some – helps.

▶ ....

8 Write an email to your friend Basim in Alexandria: (4Ms)

Invite him to spend the week-end in Aswan. Your name is Adel and your email is Adel@ gmail.com. Your friend's email is Basim@ yahoo. com.

▶ Ideas to help you:

- ❑ Greet your friend.
- ❑ Tell him about Aswan.
- ❑ Ask him to tell when he will come.
- ❑ Invite him.
- ❑ Ask him to bring his camera.
- ❑ Finish the email.

....

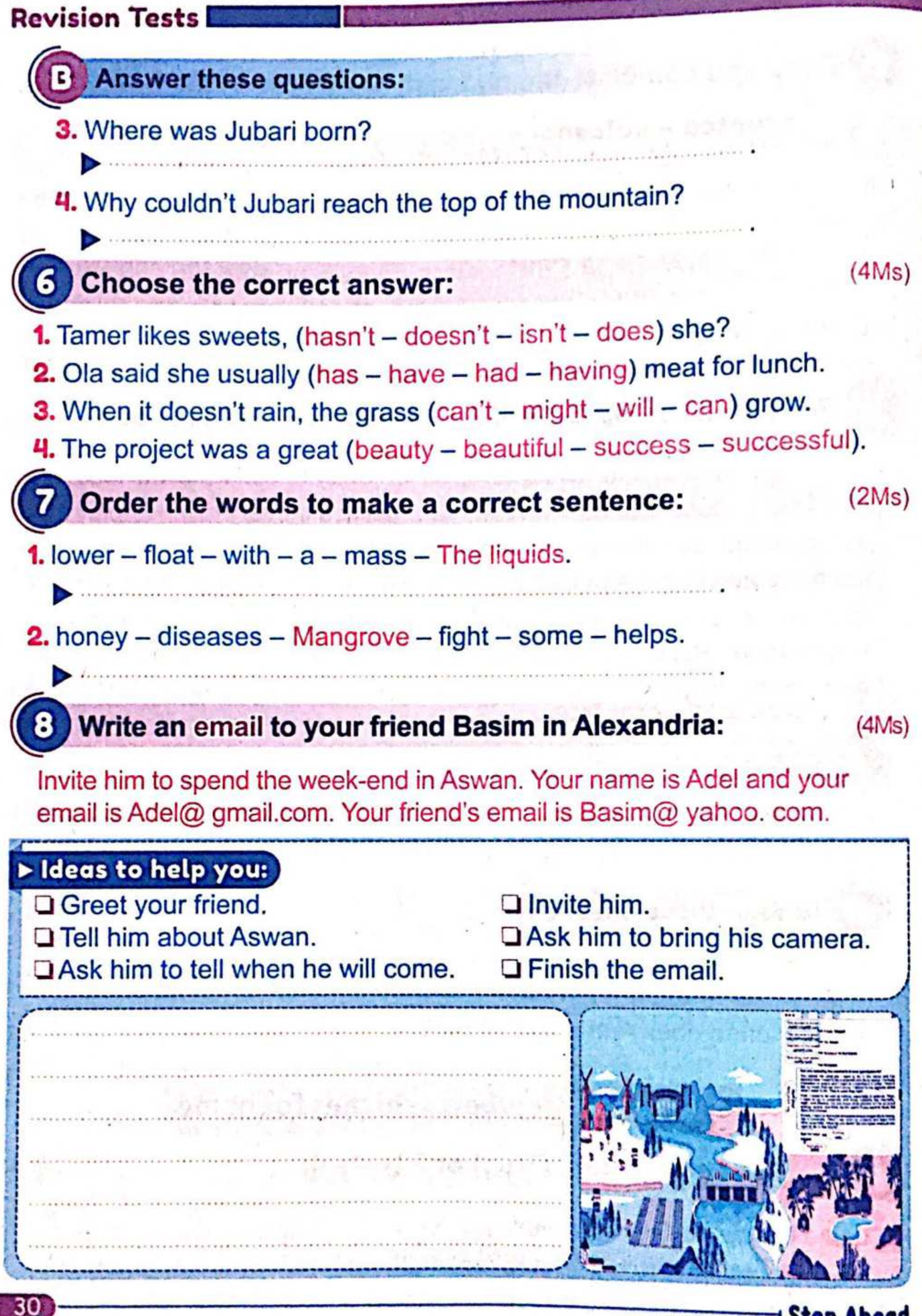
....

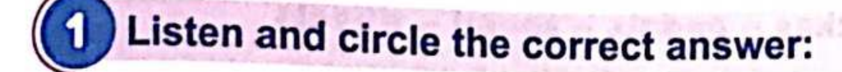
....

....

....

....





Revision Test 3

Total ___ / 30

1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (4Ms)

Our veins and arteries carry blood around our bodies. Arteries move blood away from our heart. Veins carry blood to it. The nutrients and oxygen that we need are in our blood. But we don't use carbon dioxide like plants do. Humans need sunlight, too. We can't make our own food, but we get vitamin D from sunlight.

1. Our veins and arteries carry (water – salt – sugar – blood) around our bodies.
2. (Veins – Arteries – Mouth – Nose) move blood away from our heart.
3. We don't use (nutrients – oxygen – carbon dioxide – water) like plants.
4. We get vitamin D from (sunlight – water – food – nutrients).

2 Listen and complete: (4Ms)

Salt was a very important resource in ancient Egypt, and they sold it to other countries, too. People used salt to keep food fresh. It was also useful in medicine and agriculture. Some of the lakes in the Nile Delta had lots of salt which people could take to use or sell.

1. Salt was a very important .... in ancient Egypt.
2. They sold it to other ....
3. People used salt to keep food ....
4. Some of the .... in the Nile Delta had lots of salt.

ملحوظة هامة: عند إجابة سؤال الاستماع يجب على الطفل قراءة الأسئلة جميعها جيدًا قبل الاستماع ثم يقوم بالإجابة أثناء سماع النص.

☆ يقوم المُعلم أو ولي الأمر بمسح الكود الموجود للاستماع إلى نص الاستماع أو يقوم المُعلم أو ولي الأمر بالجلوس مقابل الطفل وقراءة النص له ويقوم الطفل بالإجابة أثناء الاستماع.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4Ms)

bike – brakes – pedals – speed – wheels

You use force to get the bike to move by pushing the ....
You also use force to stop the bike, by using the .... That slows down or stops the .... If you want to increase your .... , push the pedals more quickly.

4 Read the following text and then answer the questions below: (4Ms)

You must think about the food you eat. How much you exercise and how much you sleep. If you want to be fit, some foods help you to grow and make you strong because they contain proteins. Proteins make our bones and teeth strong. They are found in foods such as meat, fish and beans. You also need foods that contain carbohydrates. Bread, rice and sugar contain carbohydrates. Finally, we need foods that contain vitamins because they protect us from illness.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Proteins make our bones and teeth (weak – strong – bad).
2. Bread, rice and sugar contain (vitamins – proteins – carbohydrates).

B Answer these questions:

3. What does the underlined word "they" refer to?
   ▶ ....
4. How are vitamins useful?
   ▶ ....

The Reader **Incredible places around the world**

5 A- Read and write T (True) or F (False): (4Ms)

1. The Giant's Causeway is in Southern Ireland. (   )
2. Institute for Sound and Vision helps disabled people. (   )

B Answer these questions:

3. Why do divers love going to Sharm El Luli?
▶ ....

4. When was Bibliotheca Alexandria opened?
▶ ....

6 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. Your heart is so important (because – and – but – so) you have to keep it healthy.
2. There is so much (beauty – beautiful – luck – lucky) in the Amazon rainforest.
3. He would be lazy if he (eat – ate – eats – is eating) too much.
4. They haven't finished their homework yet, (don't – hasn't – have – haven't) they?

7 Order the words to make a correct sentence: (2Ms)

1. do – each – How – animals – help – other?
▶ ....?

2. bike – a – haven't – before – I – ridden.
▶ ....

8 Write a text of (55) words using the following guiding elements: (4Ms)

"A visit to the zoo"

▶ **Ideas to help you:** last week – visit – the zoo – saw – different – animals – feed – monkeys – ride – elephants – played – enjoyed

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Revision Test 4



1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (4Ms)

When you are riding his bike, you use a push force to move the pedals. When you want to stop the bike, you use the brakes. The brakes slow down or stop the wheels. If you want to increases your speed, you must push more quickly. Then you will go faster.

1. When you are riding his bike, you use a (pull – push – tension – hit) force.
2. When you want to stop the bike, you use the (brakes – pedals – wheels – seats).
3. If you want to (stop – slow – increases – pull) your speed, you must push more quickly.
4. The brakes slow down or stop the (seats – brakes – pedals – wheels).



2 Listen and complete: (4Ms)

Nabq is a very big National Park in South Sinai. Along the coast here, there are 4.8 kilometers of mangrove forest, which is the largest in the Red Sea. We went there to learn why mangrove forests are so important for the marine ecosystem.

1. Nabq is a very big National .... in South Sinai.
2. Along the coast here, there are 4.8 kilometers of .... forest.
3. The forest is the largest in the .... Sea.
4. Mangrove forests are so important for the marine ....

ملحوظة هامة: عند إجابة سؤال الاستماع يجب على الطفل قراءة الأسئلة جميعها جيدًا قبل الاستماع ثم يقوم بالإجابة أثناء سماع النص.

☆ يقوم المُعلم أو ولي الأمر بمسح الكود الموجود للاستماع إلى نص الاستماع أو يقوم المُعلم أو ولي الأمر بالجلوس مقابل الطفل وقراءة النص له ويقوم الطفل بالإجابة أثناء الاستماع.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4Ms)

museums – natural – sources – Copper – mines

Ancient Egypt was very successful because it had good .... resources. .... was very important metal in ancient Egypt. It was easy to bend, and people used it to make tools, cooking pots, and knives, as well as jewelry. They get it from .... We can see a lot of these objects today in Egyptian ....

4 Read the following text and then answer the questions below: (4Ms)

Football is the most popular game in the world. Most people like it. Nobody knows who started the game. The first rules of the game were written in London in 1863. the main rules of the game are not difficult. A team wins by scoring the most goals. The Football World Cup competition takes place every four years. It's a great honor to any country to win this cup. Egypt won lots of African competitions but it hasn't won the World Cup before. We wish Egypt could win the Football World Cup one day.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The first rules of football were written in (America – England – Italy).
2. Egypt won the Football World Cup (two – one – no) times.

B Answer these questions:

3. How do you win at football?
   ▶ ....

4. What does the underlined word "it" refer to?
   ▶ ....

The Reader **Jubari searches for home**

5 A- Read and write T (True) or F (False): (4Ms)

1. Gazelles can run quickly on the sand. (   )
2. Jubari and his mother lived in Wadi el Gazelle. (   )



B Answer these questions:

3. Which animal did Jubari meet in the south?
   ▶ ....

4. Why couldn't Jubari drink sea water?
   ▶ ....

6 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. He said it (is – was – are – were) hot and sunny.
2. (Has – Have – Do – Are) you done your homework?
3. There isn't any grass to eat, so the rabbits (won't – might not – can – will) be hungry.
4. This is a medicinal plant (where – who – which) helps people with coughs.

7 Order the words to make a correct sentence: (2Ms)

1. away – heart – from – Arteries – blood – our – move.
   ▶ ....

2. People – the pyramids – of – come – Giza – to visit.
   ▶ ....

8 Write a text of (55) words using the following guiding elements: (4Ms)

"Ramy's favorite hobby"

▶ **Ideas to help you:** **Ramy – interested in – photography – likes – taking – photos – took part – competition – won – prize**



....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Revision Test 5





1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (4Ms)

Most trees can't grow in salt water, but mangrove trees can. They have amazing roots which grow high out of the water. These roots help them get oxygen. The trees' leaves are very thick. These special leaves stop the plants losing water when it's very hot.

1. Most trees can't grow in (fresh – salt – clean – tasty) water.
2. The roots help them get (oxygen – carbon dioxide – fish – smoke).
3. The trees' leaves are very (thin – fat – small – thick).
4. These special leaves stop the plants losing (food – nutrients – water – oxygen) when it's very hot.

2 Listen and complete: (4Ms)

Visitors to Rwanda can have an amazing rainforest adventure on The Canopy Walk in Nyungwe National Park. The bridge was built in 2010. It's 160 meters long and 74 meters above the ground. It is in the highest part of the trees, so visitors can see monkeys and birds.

1. .... to Rwanda can have an amazing rainforest adventure.
2. The .... was built in 2010.
3. It's 160 meters long and 74 meters above the ....
4. Visitors can see .... and birds.

ملحوظة هامة: عند إجابة سؤال الاستماع يجب على الطفل قراءة الأسئلة جميعها جيدًا قبل الاستماع ثم يقوم بالإجابة أثناء سماع النص.

☆ يقوم المُعلم أو ولي الأمر بمسح الكود الموجود للاستماع إلى نص الاستماع أو يقوم المُعلم أو ولي الأمر بالجلوس مقابل الطفل وقراءة النص له ويقوم الطفل بالإجابة أثناء الاستماع.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4Ms)

Egyptians – cities – Nile – pyramids – rocks

Stones and .... were a useful natural resource in ancient Egypt. Because there were lots of rocks such as limestone, the ancient .... could build the ...., and many other big and important buildings and temples. Boats on the .... transported some of the stones across Egypt to the important cities.

4 Read the following text and then answer the questions below: (4Ms)

El Fayoum is a small town near the desert. It is in a big oasis. We can go there by car, by bus or by train. There are many fields with canals and farmers grow many things there. North of the town there is a big lake. It's Karoun Lake. The town is famous for its big waterwheels. Many people like to visit El Fayoum on holidays.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. El Fayoum is near the (fields – lakes – desert).
2. The town is famous for its big (rivers – waterwheels – deserts).

B Answer these questions:

3. How do people go to El Fayoum?
▶ ....

4. Where's the lake of Karoun?
▶ ....

The Reader Jubari searches for home

5 A- Read and write T (True) or F (False): (4Ms)

1. Subira taught Jubari how to be close to predators. (   )
2. Lake Nasser is a man-made lake. (   )

B Answer these questions:

3. Where does the dugong live?
▶ ....

4. Why did the brown turtle ask Jubari not to walk there?
▶ ....

6 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. She doesn't want to wait because she isn't a (successful – success – patient – patience) person.
2. You should eat a lot of vegetables (so – and – but – because) they are healthy
3. I (bought – have bought – has bought – buy) a new mobile last month.
4. If he eats healthy food, he (will – won't – would – is) be strong.

7 Order the words to make a correct sentence: (2Ms)

1. usually – things – the ground – pulls – Gravity – to.
▶ ....

2. some – Why – you – send – don't – photos?
▶ .... ?

8 Write an e-mail to your friend Azza: (4Ms)

telling her about the shopping you did with your mother yesterday, which shops you went to, what you bought, how you went and returned, how your time was. Your email is Fatima@ hotmail.com. Your friend's email is Azza@ gmail .com.

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

From: Maged

To: Asser

Subject: In the future ...

Hi Asser,

Are you enjoying the weekend at your grandparents?

You asked me what job I want to do in the future and I've decided now. I want to be a scientist and study space. I'm really interested in space and I want to understand it better. There's still so much that we don't know. I talked to my parents about what I need to do. This is what they said: -

First, I need to do well at school, especially in science. Then, I need to go to university and study subjects like chemistry, math, and physics. Do you know what physics is? It's all about energy, space, and time, so it's useful if you want to study the stars and planets.

Finally, I need to find a job at a place where people study space, like a university. Then I can work on projects and learn from other scientists. What do you think? Do you know what job you want to do in the future?

Bye for now!
Maged

Revision Test 6



Total
30

1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (4Ms)

The Ngorongoro Crater in Tanzania is the largest volcanic crater in the world. It formed when a volcano erupted millions of years ago. It is about 260 square kilometers. The sides of the crater are over 600 meters tall, and inside there are wetlands and forests.

1. The Ngorongoro Crater is the (smallest – youngest – oldest – largest) volcanic crater in the world.
2. It formed when a volcano (destroyed – eroded – erupted – slept) millions of years ago.
3. The crater is about (600 – 260 – 360 – 460) square kilometers.
4. Inside the crater, there are wetlands and (deserts – forests – rivers – farmland).

2 Listen and complete: (4Ms)

I'm Amal. I want to be an astronaut because I'm interested in the stars and the planets. It is important to study other planets because it helps us understand our own planet, and this might help us solve some of Earth's problems. When you see videos of the International Space Station, it looks fun living without gravity - the people float all the time!

1. Amal wants to be an ....
2. Amal is interested in the stars and the ....
3. This might help us solve some of Earth's ....
4. When you see videos of the International Space Station, it looks fun living without ....

ملحوظة هامة: عند إجابة سؤال الاستماع يجب على الطفل قراءة الأسئلة جميعها جيدًا قبل الاستماع ثم يقوم بالإجابة أثناء سماع النص.

☆ يقوم المُعلم أو ولي الأمر بمسح الكود الموجود للاستماع إلى نص الاستماع أو يقوم المُعلم أو ولي الأمر بالجلوس مقابل الطفل وقراءة النص له ويقوم الطفل بالإجابة أثناء الاستماع.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4Ms)

coast – marine – global – National – protect

Nabq is a very big .... Park in South Sinai. Along the .... here, there are 4.8 kilometers of mangrove forest, which is the largest in the Red Sea. Mangrove forests are so important for the .... ecosystem. Mangrove trees .... the non-living things and the living things in the marine ecosystem.

4 Read the following text and then answer the questions below: (4Ms)

There is a library in our school. We visit the library and sit there to read different books. There are a lot of books in the library. Miss Rehab, the librarian, helps us to choose the books we like to read. She puts books on shelves. There are science fiction books, books tell us jokes, books tell us everything about space and other kinds of books. Libraries are very good places to spend your time in a useful way.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Students go to the library to (type – sleep – read).
2. The librarian puts the books on (floors – desks – shelves).

B Answer these questions:

3. How can we spend our time in a useful way?

▶ ....

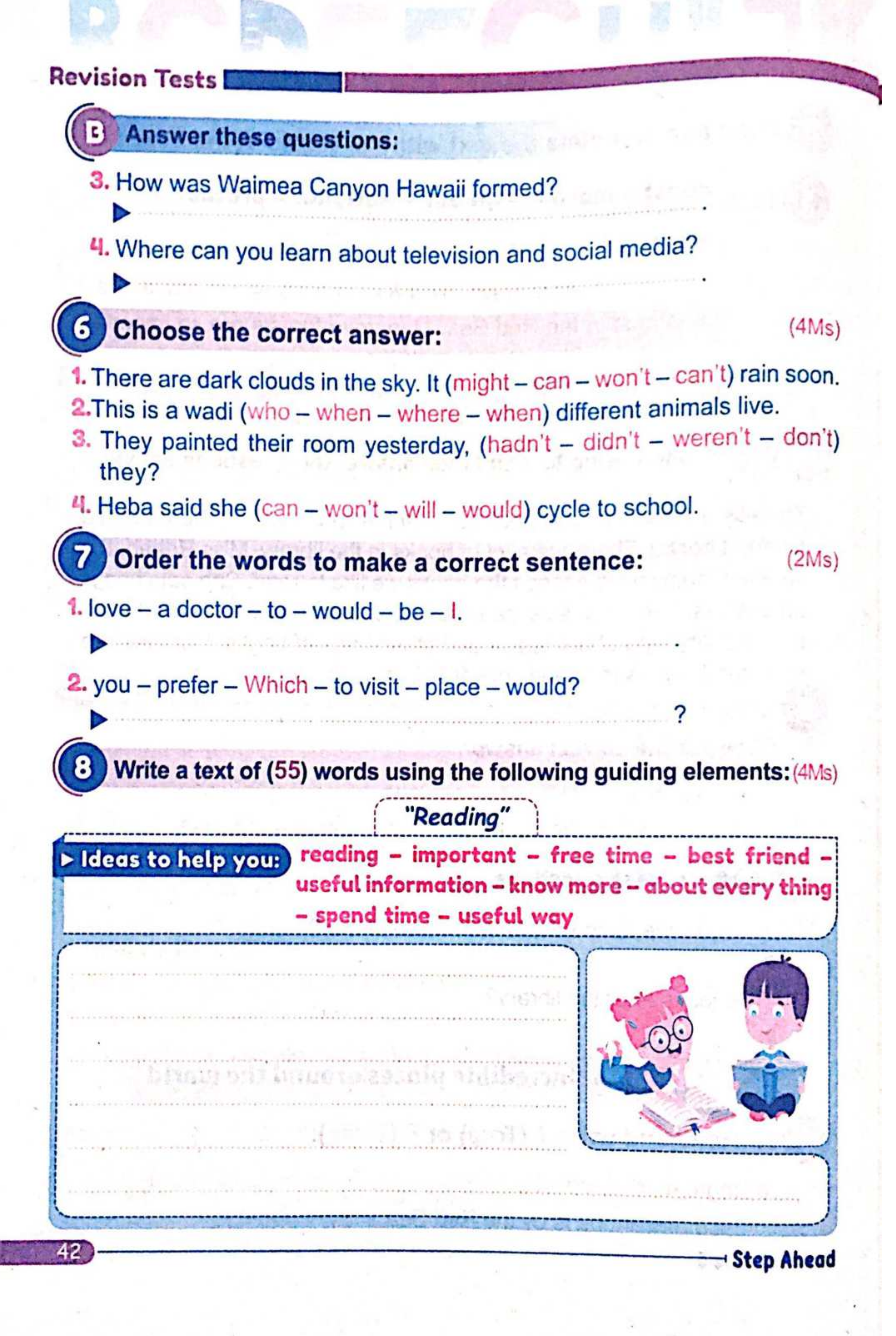
4. Who looks after the library?

▶ ....

The Reader Incredible places around the world

5 A- Read and write T (True) or F (False): (4Ms)

1. Cerro Negro means red hill. (   )
2. Bibliotheca Alexandria is by the Red Sea. (   )



B Answer these questions:

3. How was Waimea Canyon Hawaii formed?

▶ ....

4. Where can you learn about television and social media?

▶ ....

6 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. There are dark clouds in the sky. It (might – can – won't – can't) rain soon.
2. This is a wadi (who – when – where – when) different animals live.
3. They painted their room yesterday, (hadn't – didn't – weren't – don't) they?
4. Heba said she (can – won't – will – would) cycle to school.

7 Order the words to make a correct sentence: (2Ms)

1. love – a doctor – to – would – be – I.

▶ ....

2. you – prefer – Which – to visit – place – would?

▶ .... ?

8 Write a text of (55) words using the following guiding elements: (4Ms)

"Reading"

▸ Ideas to help you: reading – important – free time – best friend – useful information – know more – about every thing – spend time – useful way

....

....

....

....

....

....

Revision Test 7

Total
30

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

(4Ms)

Last week, our class went on a trip to the waterfalls at Wadi El Rayan. It was beautiful! There are two lakes there: one at the top of the waterfalls and one at the bottom. The waterfalls are 67 meters high. The water comes from an oasis in the desert. An oasis is a place in the desert with water.

1. Last (year – week – month – day), our class went on a trip to the waterfalls at Wadi El Rayan.
2. There are two (rivers – ponds – seas – lakes) there.
3. The waterfalls are (sixty seven – seventy six – sixty six – seventy seven) meters high.
4. A/An (lake – island – oasis – mountain) is a place in the desert with water.

2 Listen and complete:



(4Ms)

The history of Arabs is full of great inventors and discoverers. Abbas Ibn Firnas was an important person who invented many things, including water clocks. Abbas Ibn Firnas became very famous because he was probably the first person ever to fly using wings.

1. The history of Arabs is full of great .... and discoverers.
2. Abbas Ibn Firnas was an .... person who invented many things.
3. Abbas Ibn Firnas became very ....
4. He was probably the first person ever to fly using ....

ملحوظة هامة: عند إجابة سؤال الاستماع يجب على الطفل قراءة الأسئلة جميعها جيدًا قبل الاستماع ثم يقوم بالإجابة أثناء سماع النص.

☆ يقوم المُعلم أو ولي الأمر بمسح الكود الموجود للاستماع إلى نص الاستماع أو يقوم المُعلم أو ولي الأمر بالجلوس مقابل الطفل وقراءة النص له ويقوم الطفل بالإجابة أثناء الاستماع.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4Ms)

exercise – unhealthy – healthy – sports – relax

Seleem is a .... boy. He loves .... He plays tennis, football, and basketball. He eats healthy food like fruit, vegetables, and rice. He doesn't eat a lot of chocolate because he knows that this food isn't very healthy. In the evening, he wants to ...., so he reads a book. He does a lot of ....

4 Read the following text and then answer the questions below: (4Ms)

Uncle Fahmy is a dentist in a big hospital. He likes his work very much because he helps people look after their teeth. He always reads books of medicine. He is married to aunt Rania who is a teacher. Her hobbies are reading books and taking photos. They have three children Islam, Ehab and Mai. They are a happy family.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Uncle Fahmy and his wife have (two – three – four) sons.
2. Uncle Fahmy reads books of (English – medicine – children).

B Answer these questions:

3. Why does uncle Fahmy like his work?
▶ ....
4. What are aunt Rania's hobbies?
▶ ....

The Reader **Jubari searches for home**

5 A- Read and write T (True) or F (False): (4Ms)

1. Wadi el Gemal is a terrible place for gazelles. (   )
2. Jubari couldn't eat the seagrass because he wasn't hungry. (   )

B Answer these questions:

3. What did Subira teach Jubari?

▶ ....

4. Which animal did Jubari meet in the east?

▶ ....

6 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. This is Ramy (when – where – who – which) lives in Sohag.
2. Cub (can't – can – will – might) sleep because he's hungry.
3. If we (go – would go – went – will go) to bed early, we'll get up early.
4. You'll come with us, (won't – can't – wouldn't – aren't) you?

7 Order the words to make a correct sentence: (2Ms)

1. do – use – force – When – you – push?

▶ .... ?

2. lots – crops – Farmers – of – grew – different.

▶ ....

8 Write an e-mail to your friend Akram: (4Ms)

Greet him and his family, then tell him about the school trip you and your friends have made, where you have gone, the food and drinks you have taken, how you have gone there and how you have spent your time. Your email is Hosam@ net.com. Your friend's email is Akram@ yahoo.com.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

The sender's email
البريد الإلكتروني للمرسل
From: Maged

The receiver's email
البريد الإلكتروني للمرسل إليه
To: Aseer

The title of the email
عنوان الموضوع
Subject: In the future ...

Greeting and name
التحية والاسم
Hi Aseer,

The email body
موضوع الرسالة

Are you enjoying the weekend at your grandparents?

You asked me what job I want to do in the future and I've decided now. I want to be a scientist and study space. I'm really interested in space and I want to understand it better. There's still so much that we don't know. I talked to my parents about what I need to do. This is what they said:

First, I need to do well at school, especially in science. Then, I need to go to university and study subjects like chemistry, math, and physics. Do you know what physics is? It's all about energy, space, and time, so it's useful if you want to study the stars and planets.

Finally, I need to find a job at a place where people study space, like a university. Then I can work on projects and learn from other scientists. What do you think? Do you know what job you want to do in the future?

Bye for now! — Ending
خاتمة

Maged — Signature
توقيع

Revision Test 8

Total ___ / 30



1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (4Ms)

Pictures of life in ancient Egypt often show jewelry and beautiful objects made from gold! We think they discovered gold about 5,000 years ago. At first, they found it in rivers, then they made mines to get more out of the ground. Archaeologists have discovered some ancient gold mines in the Eastern Desert.

1. Pictures of life in ancient Egypt often show (jewelry – pots – tools – pans) and beautiful objects.
2. We think they discovered (copper – oil – silver – gold) about 5,000 years ago.
3. They made (rivers – holes – mines – walls) to get more gold out of the ground.
4. Archaeologists have discovered some ancient gold mines in the (Western – Eastern – Northern – Southern) Desert.



2 Listen and complete: (4Ms)

The ancient Egyptians had so many plants like flax. This tall plant has blue flowers. The plant turns yellow after the flowers die. Flax was important in ancient Egypt. People used it to make linen for clothes, as well as for strong rope.

1. The ancient Egyptians had so many plants like ………………… .
2. This tall plant has blue ………………… .
3. People used it to make ………………… for clothes.
4. People used it to make strong ………………… .

ملحوظة هامة: عند إجابة سؤال الاستماع يجب على الطفل قراءة الأسئلة جميعها جيدًا قبل الاستماع ثم يقوم بالإجابة أثناء سماع النص.

☆ يقوم المُعلم أو ولي الأمر بمسح الكود الموجود للاستماع إلى نص الاستماع أو يقوم المُعلم أو ولي الأمر بالجلوس مقابل الطفل وقراءة النص له ويقوم الطفل بالإجابة أثناء الاستماع.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4Ms)

moves – resistance – pilot – museum – doctor

I'm Karim. I decided I wanted to be a .... when I went to an airplane festival with my mom and dad. We saw lots of different planes flying in the sky, and some of them did amazing .... It looked amazing. There was also a small .... , and I learned how air .... helps the planes to stay in the air!

4 Read the following text and then answer the questions below: (4Ms)

Man always hopes to land on the moon. Perhaps he will live on it. He hopes to grow food on it. This is a good idea. But do you know how to go to the moon? They go there by spaceships. I hope to go there one day. People who traveled to the moon took photographs of it and collected soil and rocks. They say that there is no life of any kind there.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The underlined word "there" refers to the (spaceship – life – moon).
2. There's (some – any – no) life on the moon.

B Answer these questions:

3. How do people go to the moon?
   ▶ ....
4. What did people who traveled to the moon do?
   ▶ ....

The Reader **Jubari searches for home**

5 A- Read and write T (True) or F (False): (4Ms)

1. Jubari gazelle couldn't reach the top of the mountain. (   )
2. The dead tree in Lake Nasser was a mangrove tree. (   )

B Answer these questions:

3. Where is the turtle's home?

▶ ....

4. What did the crocodile want to do? Why?

▶ ....

6 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. They weren't (luck – lucky – beauty – beautiful) that day. They didn't see any wild animals.
2. She plays handball, tennis (so – because – but – and) volleyball.
3. Has she (clean – cleaning – cleaned – cleans) the kitchen?
4. Aya said he (like – liked – likes – is like) reading stories.

7 Order the words to make a correct sentence: (2Ms)

1. without – We – stay – food – here – can't.

▶ ....

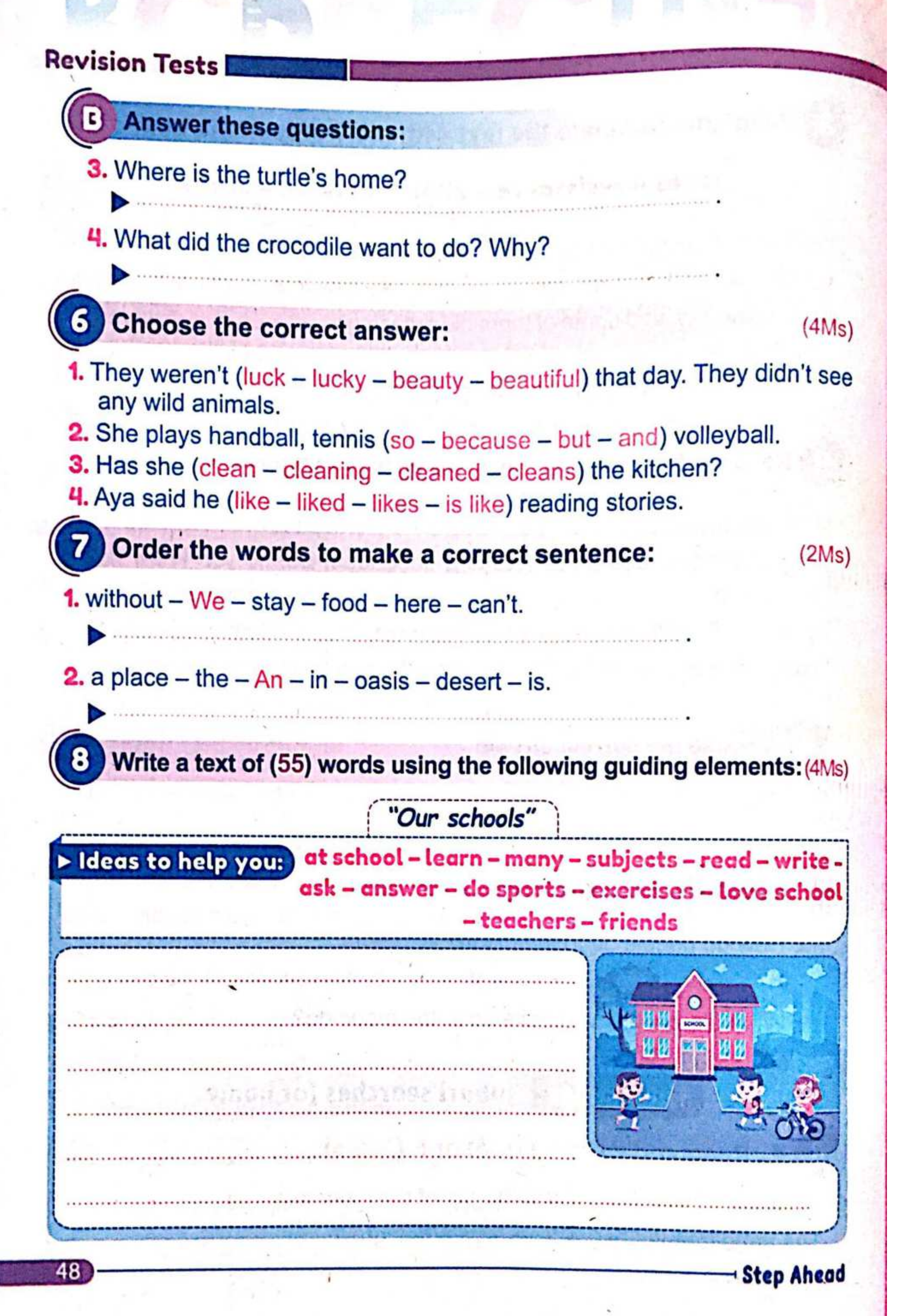
2. a place – the – An – in – oasis – desert – is.

▶ ....

8 Write a text of (55) words using the following guiding elements: (4Ms)

"Our schools"

▶ Ideas to help you: at school – learn – many – subjects – read – write – ask – answer – do sports – exercises – love school – teachers – friends



....

....

....

....

....

....



Unit (1)

Lesson (1)

1 Read and complete the text
1- National 2- coast 3- forest
4- ecosystem

2 Read the text again and circle
1- salt water 2- protect
3- carbon dioxide 4- flowers 5- interact

3 Read the text again and complete :
1- thick 2- survive 3- living things
4- non-living 5- illnesses 6- butterflies

4 Order the words:
1– Mangrove trees help the environment.
2– Why do little fish live under mangrove trees?
3– Mangrove trees protect the non-living things.
4– Different animals live in the mangrove trees.
5– Mangrove trees help us with global warming.
6– What is the importance of mangrove trees?
7– How can mangrove trees help with global warming?
8– Most trees can't grow in salt water.
9– Mangrove trees help young fish survive.
10– Mangrove honey helps fight some diseases.

5 Read and circle T (True) or F (False):
1- F 2- F 3- F 4- T 5- T

6 Punctuate the following sentences:
1- Why did Heba's class visit the mangrove trees?
2- Nabq is a very big National Park in South Sinai.
3- The mangrove forest is along the Red Sea coast.
4- Which ecosystems do you find in Egypt?

7 Read the following then answer:
1- salt 2- oxygen
3-They grow high out of the water.
4-Mangrove trees protect the non-living things in the marine ecosystem. When there are storms, their deep roots stop the sand washing away. The forests are also a safe home for many animals.

Lesson (2)

1 Match to make correct sentences:
1- e 2- d 3- a
4- c 5- f 6- b

2 Complete the sentences with words:
1- who 2- which 3- where

3 Choose the correct word(s):
1- who 2- which 3- where 4- which
5- which 6- where 7- who 8- who
9- which 10- who 11- who 12- where

4 Complete with "who - which - where":
1- who 2- where 3- who 4- which
5- where 6- who 7- who 8- which
9- where 10- who 11- which 12- where

Lesson (3)

1 Complete the sentences:
1- trees 2- ecosystem 3- living things
4- survive 5- seeds 6- interact

2 Choose the correct word (s):
1- beauty 2- lucky 3- patience
4- beautiful 5- success 6- patient
7- beauty 8- lucky 9- patience
10- success

3 Write N (Noun) or A (Adjective):
a- Noun b- Adjective c- Noun
d- Noun e- Adjective f- Adjective
g- Noun h- Adjective i- Noun

4 Order the words:
1- The Amazon rainforest is a very important ecosystem.
2- The parts of forest ecosystem interact.
3- Where is the Amazon forest?
4- How do animals help each other?

5 Write a paragraph:
"The forest ecosystem"
The forest ecosystem is full of different living and non-living things. Lots of different animals, birds and insects live in the forest ecosystem. They all interact with each other. Wild, big animals eat smaller animals. Some animals eat plants and the leaves of plants. The forest is full different

kinds of trees and plants. Sometimes there are ponds in forests. Crocodiles live in such ponds. All the different animals and birds in the forest are a community.

Lesson (4)

1 Match:

1- c 2- a 3- b

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

mangrove - mistake - seeds - pollen

3 Read the story again and circle:

1-food 2- kingfisher 3- hear
4- bee 5- people

4 Order the words:

1- The trees protect the worms.
2- Are the people back again?
3- The animals heard a buzzing sound.
4- Three bees were buzzing around the trees.

5 Complete the story:

1- mangrove 2- cut down 3- people
4- worried 5- bees 6- trees
7- were planting 8- food

6 Read the story and answer:

1-The Lizard lives in the mangrove tree.
2-The problem is that it's difficult to find food. 3- People cut down trees.
4- Because the trees protect the worms and the fish they eat, but people cut down trees. 5- To help the trees grow.
6- Because people don't come to cut down more trees. They come to plant new trees.

Lesson (5)

1 Read and circle the correct word:

beats - heart - exercise - oxygen

2 Complete the sentences:

1- vegetables and fish 2- sports - Exercise
3- swim - bike 4- relax

3 Choose the correct(s) in brackets:

1- humans 2- veins 3- oxygen
4- Arteries 5- heart
6- veins and arteries 7- veins
8- oxygen 9- sunlight 10- protect

4 Read the text again and answer:

1- Yes 2- No 3- Yes
4- Yes 5- Yes 6- No

5 Order the words:

1- Are plants similar to humans?
2- Veins and arteries carry blood around our bodies.
3- Arteries move blood away from our heart.
4- Sunlight makes a lot of people feel happy.
5- We get Vitamin D from sunlight.
6- How often does your heart beat?
7- What does your heart do?
8- How does blood move to your heart?

Lesson (6)

1 Choose the correct word(s):

1- and 2- but 3- so
4- but 5- because 6- so
7- and 8- and 9- so 10- but

2 Complete sentences following:

1- because 2- so 3- and
4- but 5- and

3 Rewrite the sentences:

1- Weal likes fish but he doesn't like lamb.
2-Talia eats dates, pomegranates and figs.
3- I went to the library because I needed a book.
4- Lara wants to keep her heart healthy, so she does exercise.
5- Walid and Shady went to the park and played tennis.

4 Order the words:

1- Seleem is a healthy boy.
2- Lara wants to keep her heart healthy.
3- Seleem doesn't eat a lot of chocolate.
4- I read books to relax.
5- How do they stay healthy?
6- Chicken and beans are healthy food.

5 Punctuate the following sentences:

1- How do Tamer and his family stay healthy?
2- She studied English, Arabic, and Math yesterday evening.
3- His sister Amira plays tennis.
4- In the evening, Seleem wants to relax.
5- Is Dina good at playing tennis?
6- Mom bought carrots, tomatoes, potatoes, and beans.

6 Complete the sentences:

1- because 2- but 3- so 4- so
5- and 6- but 7- so 8- and

Lesson (7)

1 Read the story again and match:

1- e 2- a 3- d
4- c 5- f 6- b

2 Circle the correct words in brackets:

will – will – might – can't – must

3 Complete the sentences:

1- will 2- might 3- can't
4- might 5- Can 6- can't

4 Order the words:

1- Why do you want it to rain?
2- We can play in the sunshine.
3- Can we catch a rabbit to eat?
4- Do you like the rain now?
5- The rabbits will come back.
6- They played in the cool water.
7- Some rabbits might be dead.
8- The rabbits don't have any food.
9- We must move to a different place.
10- We can't stay here without food.

5 Use your ideas to write a story:

متروك للطالب

Unit (1) Test (1)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

1- environment 2- marine
3- roots 4- home

2 Listen and complete:

1- Arteries 2- blood
3- carbon dioxide 4- sunlight

3 Read and complete the text:

ecosystem / living things / non-living / survive

4 Read then answer:

1- dry 2- plants
3- It refers to desert animals.
4- It is usually very hot.

6 Choose the correct answer:

1- which 2- can't 3- so 4- who

7 Order the words:

1- They live close to a mountain.
2- How often does your heart beat?

6 Write a text of 55 words:

"Rain"

Rain is very important. Living things can't live without water. Rain helps humans and animals to drink. And it helps plants, trees and grass to grow. If there isn't rain, plants and grass won't grow. Animals that eat plants will be hungry. They might die. So bigger animals also won't find small animals to eat. So water is life. Without water there is no life.

Unit (2)

Lesson (1)

1 Read and complete the dialogue:

1- crater 2- volcanic 3- erupted 4- wetlands

2 Read and complete the text:

1- continent 2- valleys 3- natural 4- world

3 Choose the correct word:

1- volcano 2- wonders 3- continent
4- crater 5- coasts 6- erupted
7- dunes 8- Mount 9- Falls 10- eroded

4 Match the words to the definitions:

1- g 2- d 3- e
4- f 5- a 6- c 7- b

5 Punctuate the following sentences:

1- The African continent is an amazing place.
2- Have you ever seen Victoria Falls?
3- The Ngorongoro Crater is in Tanzania.
4- How high is Mount Kilimanjaro?

6 Order the words:

1- The African continent is an amazing place.
2- An enormous waterfall is on the Zambezi River.
3- The Ngorongoro Crater is a large volcanic crater.
4- Mount Kilimanjaro is made of three volcanoes.
5- The Sahara Desert is the largest hot desert.
6- Sand dunes can be about 180 meters high.
7- The Antarctic is bigger than the Sahara Desert.
8- Which place would you prefer to visit?
9- Victoria Fall is about 108 meters high.
10- Kilimanjaro is the tallest mountain in Africa.

7 Order the words:
1- (b) 2- (a) 3- (b) 4- (b)
5- (a) 6- (b) 7- (b) 8- (b)

Lesson (2)

1 Choose the correct words(s):
1- have 2- has 3- have 4- have
5- has 6- have 7- started 8- started
9- have bought 10- bought 11- has made
12- made 13- Have 14- Did 15- Has
16- Did 17- cleaned 18- clean 19- had
20- didn't 21- never 22- ever 23- go
24- have never 25- ever 26- see

2 Order the words:
1- How climate change affects the river?
2- People have eaten fish from the river.
3- He hasn't visited Aswan yet.
4- Have you visited the desert yet?
5- I have told you this story already.
6- Have you traveled on a ship?

3 Complete the text:
1- haven't visited 2- have traveled
3- went 4- saw
5- decided 6- have never sailed

4 Complete the sentences:
1- has traveled 2- has told
3- has made 4- have never sailed
5- has never met 6- haven't played

5 Write questions and short answers:
2- Have Youssef and Wael seen an elephant? - No, they haven't.
3- Has Mom ever made fesikh for Sham El-Nessim? - Yes, she has.
4- Has Yara visited Cairo? -No, she hasn't.
5- Have they ever visited another country? - Yes, they have.
6- Have you eaten Saydeya? - Yes, I have.

Lesson (3)

1 Read and complete the text:
man-made / Pyramids / kings / history

2 Read then answer the questions:
1- thousands 2- people
3- There are paintings on rocks and in caves.
4- Because some of paintings show animals such as crocodiles that live in water.

3 Read the text and match:
1- c 2- e 3- b
4- g 5- d 6- a 7- f

4 Complete the text:
man-made / Archaeologists / natural / world / volcano

5 Order the words:
1- People come to visit the Pyramids of Giza.
2- There are paintings in caves.
3- Paintings show people and animals.
4- The Canopy Walk was built in 2010.
5- Which of the places would you like to visit?

6 Write a paragraph of (55):
"The Nile River"

Africa is the second largest continent of the world's land area. It has a lot of wonders. One of these wonders is "Nile River". The Nile River is the longest river in the world. It is very important. Many countries live on its water. It is an important source of water to nearly seven countries. So, Africa has the most important river in the world.

Lesson (4)

1 Complete the sentences:
1- storm-chaser 2- snow 3- thunderstorm
4- dust storm 5- hurricane 6- flood

2 Read and write T (True) or F (False):
1- F 2- F 3- F 4- T

3 Read and write short answers:
1- Yes, he has. 2- No, he wasn't.
3- Yes, they have. 4-Yes, he has.
5- No, he didn't

4 Punctuate the following sentences:
1- Have you ever seen an extreme weather event?
2- Kamal traveled to the USA last January.
3- There was a flood near the Nile in Sudan.
4- Did you go to Giza on Tuesday?

5 Order the words:
1- Kamal's parents were storm-chasers.
2- Kamal has seen thunderstorms in Egypt.
3- Kamal took some photos of the hurricane.
4- What kind of photos does Kamal take?
5- Storm-chasers are interested in thunderstorms.

6- He won first prize for child photographers.
7- Why don't you send some photos?

6 Complete the sentences:

1- have traveled 2- has taken
3- has learned 4- have helped
5- has never been

Lesson (5)

1 Read and complete the dialogue:

island / lava / volcanoes / erupt

2 Match the words to the definitions:

1- d 2- e 3- a 4- c 5- b

3 Complete the sentences:

1- lava 2- erupt 3- mud flow
4- soil 5- ash

4 Order the words:

1- Lava comes from Java's Volcanoes.
2- The island people have to go away.
3- The lava and ash mix with mud flows.
4- What is special about the island of Java?
5- They thank the volcanoes for the helping hand.

Lessons (6-7)

1 Read then ask and answer:

1- She wants to fly "like a bird".
2- Because he has got tickets for the Luxor hot air balloons festival.
3- His book fell out of his bag.
4- It was his diary, it was about everywhere he's been.
5-They flew over the beautiful city of Luxor.

2 Write the correct definition:

1- ribbon 2- gentle
3- basket 4- flame 5- light/ lit

3 Order words:

1- He was a hot air balloon pilot.
2 - Did you read this book?
3- Would you like to have a ride?
4. He pointed to a beautiful balloon.
5- The wind below them gently.
6. Why was Mariam's dad happy?
7. Would you like to go there?
8. Rainbow Bridge is in a very hot desert.
9. Don't forget to take your sun hat.
10. She is watching the loved birds.
11. I would love to fly.
12. We will see lots of balloons.

4 You are going to write a description.

متروك للطالب

5 Imagine you went in a hot air balloon Make notes to describe the weather and the things you saw.

متروك للطالب

Unit (2) Test (2)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

1- ruins 2- centuries 3- stone 4- sell

2 Listen and complete:

1- volcanic 2- erupted 3- 260 4- wetlands

3 Read and complete the text:

floods - storms - causes - warming

4 Read and answer the questions:

1- Two 2- longer than
3. It is about 6-670 km in length.
4- Because the Nile helped them to get water and food for themselves and their animals.

6 Choose the correct answer:

1- learned 2- bought 3- go 4- never

7 Order to make a correct sentence:

1- Have you ever seen a hurricane?
2- The Nile looked like a silver ribbon.

8 Write a paragraph:

Last month my family and I decided to go to Luxor and Aswan. We went there by train. It was a nice train journey. We saw lots of cities, towns and villages during our journey. We stayed in a hotel there. First, we saw the High Dam in Aswan. Then are visited Karnak Temples. We also visited the Valley of the Kings. The weather was sunny. We were very happy. we decided to go there again.

Unit (3)

Lesson (1)

1 Read and complete the dialogue:

1- materials 2- resources
3- solar 4- renewable

2 Match A with B:
1- c 2- a 3- d 4- e 5- b

3 Choose the correct words:
1- liquid 2- gas 3- melt 4- solid 5- solid
6- boil 7- solid 8- freeze 9- liquid
10- liquid 11- gas 12- gas 13- mine
14- ice 15- renewable 16- fossil fuel
17- Steam 18- resources 19- raw
20- non-renewable 21- natural 22- gas

4 Complete the text with words:
1. boiled 2. steam 3. froze 4. ice

5 Order the words to make sentences:
1- We get raw materials from the ground.
2-The sun is a natural resource.
3- Some natural resources are renewable.
4- It has a fixed shape.
5- Liquids don't have a fixed shape.
6- You can pour water into a cup.
7- The sun gives us solar energy.

6 Complete the sentences:
1- state 2- boil 3- liquid
4- freeze 5- gas 6- melts 7- solid

7 Read and circlet T (true) or F (False):
1.F 2.T 3.T 4.F 5.T 6.F

8 Write a paragraph:
Natural resources are things we can use from nature, like wood and soil. We use these resources to make things we need. For example, w e can use the plants for food, Water to plant different crops, solar energy to generate electricity. There are two types of Natural resources. Some natural sources are renewable like solar and wind energy, but others are non-renewable like coal and gas. We can't use them again

Lesson (2)

1 Read the sentences and write a or b:
1. b 2. a 3. a 4. b 5. b 6. a

2 Choose the correct:
1- found 2- goes 3- would put 4- will
5- will save 6- would 7- will 8- would
9- play 10- ate 11- drive 12- was
13- go 14- will 15- would buy
16- won 17- saw 18- will 19- look
20- had 21- would 22- had 23- would
24- will 25- won 26- will see 27- will

3 Complete the sentences:
1- won 2- would make 3- hit
4- would melt 5- was younger

4 Complete the sentences:
1- had - would buy
2- see (saw) - will call (would call)
3- snows (snowed) - will be (would be)
4- goes - will tell 5- had 6- would go
7- would buy 8- would swim
9- was (were) 10- wouldn't be

5 Complete the sentences:
1- What are you doing tomorrow?
2- We might find dinosaur bones.
3- He is very interested in dinosaurs.
4- I think we should call an expert.
5- I have found a bone.
6- Is it a dinosaur bone?
7- I never have a dinosaur bone.

Lesson (3)

1 Read and complete the text:
1- Agriculture 2- economy
3-flooded 4- fertile

2 Read and answer the questions:
1- People used it to make linen for clothes, as well as for strong rope.
2- People found salt in some of the lakes in the Nile Delta.
3- At first they found it in rivers, then they made mines to get more of gold.
4- Because it was easy to bend, and People used it to make tools, cooking pots and knives, as well as jewelry.
5- Boats on the Nile transported some of the stones across Egypt to the important cities.

3 Read and answer the questions:
1- 4, 500 years ago. 2- Everyone liked it.
3- People used honey to make food sweet.
4- If you cut yourself, you could put honey on the cut.
5- People made long, round houses out of clay for the bees. Then they put the clay bee houses, called hives, on top of each other in the shape of a pyramid. 6- To make delicious honey.

4 Punctuate the following sentences:
1– My name's Mr Taha.

2– Did you know that ancient Egypt was very successful?
3– The Nile flooded every year and made the soil fertile.
4– Salt was also a very important resource in ancient Egypt.

5 Order the words:
1- I work at the museum.
2- I talk about ancient resources in Egypt.
3- It had good natural resources.
4- The Nile flooded every year.
5- Farmers grew lots of different crops.
6- This tall plant has blue flowers.
7- Flax was important in ancient Egypt.
8- People used linen to make clothes.

6 Write a paragraph of (55) words:
"Wood"
Wood is one of the most important natural resources. It has been used for 12,000 years. It has a great effect on the environment. Most of countries use wood mainly in many things as they us it for building houses, making tables, boats, and furniture. We can get it from trees. It was important for people in the past and it's still very important until now.

Lesson (4)

1 Match the description with the words:
1- a chair 2- oxygen 3- an ice cream
4- olive oil 5- steam 6- milk

2 Choose the correct word(s):
1- blind 2- texture 3- comfortable
4- sticky 5- odor 6- heavy 7- mass
8- rough 9- hard 10- light

3 Match A with B:
1- c 2- a 3- d 4- e 5- b

4 Order the words:
1- Heba walks around the room.
2- I like your old table.
3- This is old and rough wood.
4- I would love to learn more.
5- Can we play a game?
6- She picks up a soft banana.
7- Which object does Seleem describe?

Lesson (5)

1 Read and complete the dialogue:
1- experiment 2- container
3- liquids 4- mass

2 Complete the sentence:
2- would sink 3- would float
4- would float 5- would sink

3 Choose the correct answer:
1- experiments 2- oil 3- Honey 4- sink
5- syringe 6- detergent 7- float 8- syrup

4 Order the words to make sentences:
1- We are going to do a science experiment
2- She had some tall glass jars.
3- She showed them what to do.
4- It didn't mix with the honey.
5- They added the dish detergent.
6- The liquids with a lower mass float.

5 Read the experiment again and choose:
1- a coin 2- It has the most mass.
3- a ping pong ball. 4- It has the least mass.

Lesson (6)

1 Match the question with the answers:
1- c 2- f 3- a 4- e 5- b 6- d

2 Read the report again and answer:
1- The waterfalls are 67 meters high.
2- The water travels eight kilometers.
3- An oasis is a place in the desert with water.
4- flamingoes 5- They jumped into the bottom lake and went swimming.

3 Read then choose the correct answer:
1- the Mediterranean coast 2- fishing boats.
3- farming 4- rice and fruit 5- visit

4 Order the words to make sentences:
1- What did they do to have fun?
2- The waterfalls are 67 meters high.
3- An oasis is a palace in the desert.
4- We saw some of the birds.
5- My favorite bird was the flamingo.
6- We jumped into the bottom lake.
7- How high are the waterfalls?
8- Which bird is Weal's favorite?
9- It is safe to swim there.
10- It helped us cool down.

5 Do research and make notes:
متروك للطالب

Lesson (7)

1 Match (A) with (B):

1- c 2- b 3- d 4- a

2 Write the speech marks:

2- "Let's do a science experiment, " said Samira.

3- "Can you put a jug of water on the table, please?" asked mom.

4- "I've finished my homework," said Walid.

5- "Would you like to borrow my book?" said Nahla.

6- "We are going to the park," said Malek.

3 Choose:

1- liked 2- had 3- could
4- would 5- was going to 6- was

4 Complete the sentence:

1- can 2- loves 3- am
4- will 5- cannot 6- like

5 Complete the sentence:

1- went 2- could 3- was 4- watched

6 Order the words to make sentences:

1- We are going to do a science experiment.
2- You can work in groups of three.
3- Lara was sitting on her own.
4- Would you like to work with us?
5- They took out their pens and notebooks.
6- What do we need to do?
7- Lara looked at her note.

7 Rewrite the sentences:

1- Hossam said dad was going to take Sayed to school.
2- Eman said that she likes cooking with Mom.
3- Sameh said he would carry the shopping.
4- Nashwa said Amany could speak English well.
5- Maggie said Zahra was going to visit her cousins in Port Said.
6- Shady said that Mr Hassan worked in Alexandria.

Unit (3) Test (3)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

1- weak 2- lakes 3- sixty seven 4- oasis

2 Listen and complete:

1- pictures 2- discovered
3- mines 4- Archaeologists

3 Read and complete the text:

- salt - resource
- countries - agriculture

4 Read the text and then answer:

1- after 2- Egyptian Museum
3- 22 people. 4- They played, ate and enjoyed themselves.

6 choose the correct answer:

1- visited 2- had 3- will come 4- was

8 Order to make a correct sentence:

1- How did people transport some limestone?
2- I go to the library on Monday.

9 Write a paragraph

"The Egyptian cotton"

In Egypt, there are a lot of important crops. Cotton is one of the most important crops in Egypt. It's grown in hot countries. The Egyptian cotton is famous in the whole world. It has very good quality. We use it to make cotton clothes. We also sell it to lots of countries all over the world. It's a very important crop to the economy of Egypt.

Unit (4)

Lesson (1)

1 Choose the correct word:

1- push 2- stop 3- wheels 4- speed
5- push 6- faster 7- fall over 8- pull

2 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1- F 2- T 3- F 4- F 5- T

3 Read and Match A with B:

1- c 2- e 3- d 4- b 5- a

4 Read the text again and choose:

1- a push force 2- a pull force
3- the brakes 4- speed

5 Order the words:

1- Have you seen my bike?
2- I haven't ridden a bike before.
3- I should be good at cycling.
4- You will need to cycle harder.
5- I am good at riding a bike.
6- You need to go faster.

Lesson (2)

1 Complete the sentences:

1- friction 2- pull
3- slowly 4- smaller 5- space

2 Read and match:

1- c 2- a 3- d 4- b

3 Complete the sentences:

1- Friction 2- tension 3- Air resistance
4- spring force 5- Gravity

4 Complete the sentences:

1- Isn't 2- does 3- won't
4- can't 5- will 6- did

5 Choose the correct word:

1- hasn't 2- isn't 3- can't 4- have
5- was 6- don't 7- won't 8- doesn't
9- didn't 10- was 11- will 12- he
13- got 14-looks 15- she

6 Write the question tags:

1- did she 2- will it
3- does she 4- can they

7 Complete the sentences:

1- isn't 2- didn't tell 3- will send
4- can make 5- won't be 6- traveled

Lesson (3)

1 Order the words:

1- How did you make it? 2- How far did it fly?
3- Which airplane is easier to make?
4- Which airplane will fly farther?

Lesson (4)

1 Match to make sentences:

1- c 2- e 3- a 4- b 5- f 6- d

2 Complete the text:

1- Gravity 2- ground 3- force
4- down 5- air 6- sun

3 Order the words to make sentences:

1- Grandpa was an astronaut.
2- He always brought something interesting.
3- Do you have something to show us?
4- Gravity usually pulls things to the ground.
5- The children flew up into the air.
6- We need to go down to the ground.
7- It was an amazing feeling.

4 Write the correct definition:

1- normal 2- gravity
3- astronaut 4- tour 5- special

Lesson (5)

1 Match (A) with (B):

1- d 2- a 3- e 4- b 5- f 6- c

2 Choose:

1- Astronauts 2- engineer 3- scientist
4- pilot 5- architect 6- doctor
7- planets 8- skateboard

3 Order the words to make sentences:

1- I am interested in the stars.
2- It's important to study other planets.
3- I would love to be a doctor.
4- His job sounds interesting.
5- I went to an airplane festival.
6- We saw lots of different planes.

4 Read the text and choose:

1- a 2- a 3- b 4- a 5- b 6- b

Lesson (6)

1 Read and write T (true) or F (false):

1- F 2- F 3- T 4- T

2 Order Word to make a sentence:

1- I need to do well at school.
2- You need to study planets.
3- I need to find a job.
4- What job do you want to do?
5- Are you enjoying the weekend?
6- I talked to my parents?

4 Write an email to your friend:

from : Ahmed
to : Mohamed
Subject: My future job
Hi Mohamed,
Are you enjoying your time?
You asked me about my future job.
I have made decision. I want to be an English teacher. I am really interested in the English language. I want to master this language well. I talked to my parents about my desire. They told me some advice. First, I need to do well at school, especially in English. Then I need to go to university and study English very well. Finally, I need to find a job at place where people study English language, like a university or a school. Then I may travel abroad to England where I can practice my language

very well.
What do you think? Do you know what job do you want to do in the future?
By for now!
Ahmed

Lesson (7)

1 Match (A) with (B):
1- feathers 2- land 3- invent
4- builder 5- inventor

2 Read the story a gain and answer:
1- Because there are always new things to find out.
2- They are made of wood and feathers.
3- He flew slowly to the ground!
4- He didn't land correctly.
5- He needed to study birds better to find out how they land without hurting themselves.

3 Order the words to make sentences:
1- This bird is landing on the ground.
2- He worked on his father's farm.
3- Where are you going?
4- Ali decided to talk to the man.
5- Are you a builder?
6- They walked to the tower.
7- I need to study the birds better.

Unit (4) Test (4)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1- pushing 2- brakes 3- speed 4- brakes

2 Listen and complete:
1- engineer 2-skateboards
3-scince 4- friction

3 Read and complete the text:
1- astronaut 2- planets
3- problems 4- float

4 Read the following text and then:
1- in a lift 2- lotus
3- Cairo tower is about 62 years old.
4- You can see the Nile, all of Cairo, Giza and Helwen.

6 Choose the correct answer:
1- can 2- was
3- didn't he 4- doesn't she

7 Order the words:
1- There is no gravity on space.
2- Have you ever made a paper plane?

8 Write a paragraph:
"Parachuting"
There lots of kinds of sports. Some of these sports are dangerous. One of these dangerous sports is parachuting. If you want to do this sport, you have to be on a plane. Then you have jump out of the plane in the air. Then you count some numbers and then press a button to make the parachuting open. This helps you to land safely on the ground. Do you want to try such a dangerous sport?

Part 2 Final Revision

Revision Unit 1

1 Choose: Vocabulary
1- ecosystem 2- living things 3- species
4- survive 5- community
6- non-living things 7- honey 8- interact
9- fresh water 10- desert 11- pollen
12- rain 13- healthy 14- heart
15- sunlight 16- blood 17- beat
18- photographer 19- cut 20- marine

2 Choose: Structures
1- who 2- which 3- where 4- which
5- who 6- where 7- success 8- patient
9- beautiful 10- lucky 11- patience
12- luck 13- but 14- and 15- because
16- and 17- so 18- but 19- and
20- won't 21- might 22- will
23- must 24- can't 25- can

3 Choose: Structures
1- who 2- which 3- who
4- which 5- where 6- where

2 Choose: Structures
1- where 2- who 3- which
4- where 5- who 6- which

Unit (1) Test (1)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1- park 2- Red Sea
3- marine 4- warming

2 Listen and complete:
1- healthy 2- basketball
3- vegetables 4- exercise

3 Read and complete the text:
1- blood 2- Arteries
3- nutrients 4- carbon dioxide

4 Read the following text and then:
1- home 2- walked
3- Ten donkeys. 4- Because he felt tired.

6 Choose the correct answer:
1- can't 2- so 3- beauty 4- where

7 Order the words:
1- Mangrove trees help young fish survive.
2- How does your heart move blood?

8 Write a paragraph:
"How to be healthy"
Being healthy is very important. Your body is the most important thing you have, so you have to keep it healthy. You should eat healthy food. You should drink healthy drinks. Also you should do sports. Doing exercise is very important. It helps your body be strong. You should also take enough sleep every night. You shouldn't eat unhealthy foods or drinks.

Revision Unit 2

1 Choose: Vocabulary
1- volcano 2- canyon 3- wetland
4- crater 5- erupts 6- valley
7- century 8- Archaeologists 9- dune
10- man-made 11- Storm-chasers
12- Lava 13- soil 14- Ash 15- eroded
16- flame 17- light 18- Mud flow

2 Choose: Structures
1- fell 2- learned 3- break 4- made
5- travel 6- done 7- gave 8- hasn't
9- catch 10- never 11- say 12- traveled
13- went 14- swum 15- cleaned
16- washed 17- write 18- has lived
19- lived 20- bought 21- buy 22- went
23- ever 24- watched 25- helped
26- never 27- excited 28- exciting

Unit (2) Test (2)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1- arches 2- million
3- eighty eight 4- erupted

2 Listen and complete:
1- volcanoes 2- tallest
3- ecosystems 4- rainforests

3 Read and complete the text:
1- rainforest 2- Canopy
3- National 4- visitors

4 Read the following text and then:
1- Arabic 2- Nile Valley
3- In the northeast of Africa
4- It is famous for its fine weather all the year round.

6 Choose the correct answer:
1- have 2- visit
3- written 4- found

7 Order the words:
1- People come to visit the Pyramids of Giza.
2- What kind of photos does Kamal take?

8 Write a paragraph:
"Volcanoes"
Volcanoes are found in lots of parts of the world. They are very dangerous. When they erupt, they cause much damage and destruction. Volcanoes have one crater and sometimes more than one. When they erupt, hot liquid rocks come out of its crater. Also lava and magma come out of it. Also smoke and gases come out of its crater. Don't come near an active volcano.

Revision Unit 3

1 Choose: Vocabulary
1- hole 2- skeleton 3- museum 4- shovel
5- Copper 6- fertile 7- linen 8- economy
9- blind 10- odor 11- rough 12- texture
13- sink 14- experiments 15- oasis
16- coast 17- materials 18- fossil fuels
19- mines 20- Gas 21- liquid 22- melt
23- solid 24- boil 25- renewable
26- freeze 27- non-renewable 28- gas

2 Choose: Structures
1- would be 2- went 3- visited 4- has
5- would see 6- would 7- gets
8- would 9- will help 10- buy 11- would
12- won't watch 13- stay 14- teach
15- loved 16- could 17- hoped 18- didn't
19- had 20- visited 21- were 22- played
23- watched 24- did 25- went

26- started 27- went 28- didn't

Unit (3) Test (3)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1- resources 2- metal
3- bend 4- museums

2 Listen and complete:
1- Stones 2- limestone
3- pyramids 4- transported

3 Read and complete the text:
1- flax 2- ancient
3- linen 4- rope

4 Read the following text and then:
1- winter 2- all over the world
3- To enjoy the fine weather and sunshine of Egypt when it is very cold in their countries and to visit important places.
4- They buy some souvenirs.

6 Choose the correct answer:
1- saw 2- needed
3- will 4- was

7 Order the words:
1- Liquids don't have a fixed shape.
2- Which object does Seleem describe?

8 Write a paragraph:
"What would you do if you had a lot of money?"
Money is useful in our world. If I had a lot of money, I would do lots of things. I would buy a villa. I would buy a new car. I would travel round the world. I would have my holidays on an island. I would eat foreign dishes. I would enjoy myself. I wouldn't forget the poor. I would give money to poor people to make them happy.

Revision Unit 4

1 Choose: Vocabulary
1- pedals 2- brakes 3- pull 4- push
5- wheel 6- Gravity 7- spring 8- Tension
9- Astronauts 10- grandchildren 11- doctors
12- pilot 13- engineer 14- Scientists
15- wings 16- architect 17- land
18- feathers 19- friction 20- Air resistance

2 Choose: Structures
1- doesn't 2- can't 3- will 4- weren't
5- wasn't 6- is 7- aren't 8- can
9- could 10- aren't they 11- isn't
12- can they 13- was 14- isn't she
15- can't 16- is 17- didn't he
18- doesn't he 19- doesn't she 20- visited
21- plays 22- don't we 23- didn't he
24- doesn't help 25- don't they

Unit (4) Test (4)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1- pilot 2- airplane
3- moves 4- resistance

2 Listen and complete:
1- force 2- brakes
3- pedals 4- faster

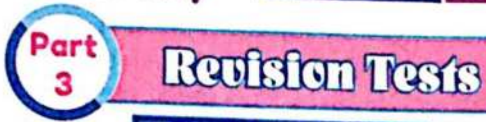
3 Read and complete the text:
1- history 2- invented
3- famous 4- wings

4 Read the following text and then:
1- plane 2- Mohamed's home
3- He's English (British).
4- Mohamed's home

6 Choose the correct answer:
1- can't 2- was
3- doesn't 4- feels

7 Order the words:
1- Which airplane is easier to make?
2- Gravity pulls things to the ground.

8 Write an email:
To: Tom@yahoo.com
From: Yasse@school.com
Subject: My news
Hi Tom, .
How are you, Tom? I'm pleased to write to you. I'm writing to tell you my latest news. My favorite school subject is science. We do lots of interesting experiments at the school lab. I also like drawing. My favorite hobby is painting and drawing. My dad has changed his job. My sister has won a prize in a photography competition.
That's all. Please write to me and tell me your news.
Best wishes
Yasser



Revision Test (1)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

1- engineer 2- interesting
3- science 4- friction

2 Listen and complete:

1- ecosystem2- non-living things
3- community 4- survive

3 Read and complete the text:

1- Bridge 2- arches
3- sandstone 4- eroded

4 Read the following text and then:

1- useful 2- job
3- English language gives us the chance to read English books and know how other people think and live. English language gives us better chances to get good jobs.
4- I should use it and listen to those who speak it.

6 Choose the correct answer:

1- but 2- which
3- has made 4- goes

7 Order the words:

1- The African continent is an amazing place.
2- Liquids don't have a fixed shape.

8 Write a paragraph:

"My favorite job"

There are lots of different jobs. But my favorite future job is to be a doctor. Doctors work in hospitals and clinics. It's a very useful job. I like it because it's great happiness to see ill people healthy and well again. My uncle is a successful doctor and I wan to be like him one day.

Revision Test (2)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

1- Agriculture 2- flooded
3- resources 4- fertile

2 Listen and complete:

1- parents 2- floods
3- weather 4- storms

3 Read and complete the text:

1- volcanoes 2- erupted
3- mountain 4- climb

4 Read the following text and then:

1- posters 2- always
3- He plays it at the school playground and at the club as well.
4- He plays it every day.

6 Choose the correct answer:

1- doesn't 2- had
3- can't 4- success

7 Order the words:

1- The liquids with a lower mass float.
2- Mangrove honey helps fight some diseases.

8 Write an email:

To: Basim@ yahoo. com
From: Adel@ gmail.com
Subject: Invitation
Hi Basim,
How are you, Basim? I'm pleased to write to you. I'm writing to invite you to spend the weekend in Aswan. You will enjoy your time here very much. The weather here is wonderful. We will visit lots of interesting places here in Aswan. I want you to bring your camera to take fantastic photos. Please, tell me when you will come.
See you soon
Adel

Revision Test (3)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

1- blood 2- Arteries
3- carbon dioxide 4- sunlight

2 Listen and complete:

1- resource 2- countries
3- fresh 4- lakes

3 Read and complete the text:

1- pedals 2- brakes
3- wheels 4- speed

4 Read the following text and then:

1- strong 2- carbohydrates
3- It refers to foods that contain vitamins.
4- Vitamins protect us from illness.

6 Choose the correct answer:

1- so 2- beauty

3- ate 4- have

7 Order the words:
1- How do animals help each other?
2- I haven't ridden a bike before.

8 Write a paragraph:
"A visit to the zoo"
Last week, I went to the zoo. I went with my family. We saw lots of different animals and birds. I fed the monkeys. My bother Hazem rode on an elephant. We ate our lunch there. We played and enjoyed our time a lot. We returned home happily.

Revision Test (4)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1- push 2- brakes
3- increases 4- wheels

2 Listen and complete:
1- Park 2- mangrove
3- Red 4- ecosystem

3 Read and complete the text:
1- natural 2- Copper
3- mines 4- museums

4 Read the following text and then:
1- England 2- no
3- A team wins by scoring the most goals.
4- It refers to Egypt.

6 Choose the correct answer:
1- was 2- Have
3- will 4- which

7 Order the words:
1- Arteries move blood away from our heart.
2- People come to visit the Pyramids of Giza.

8 Write a paragraph:
"Ramy's favorite hobby"
I have a lot of friends. Ramy is one of my best friends. He's interested in photography. He likes taking nice photos. Last month, he took part in a photography competition. He won the first prize. He was very happy and I was happy, too.

Revision Test (5)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1- salt 2- oxygen
3- thick 4- water

2 Listen and complete:
1- Visitors 2- bridge
3- ground 4- monkeys

3 Read and complete the text:
1- rocks 2- Egyptians
3- pyramids 4- Nile

4 Read the following text and then:
1- desert 2- waterwheels
3- People can go there by car, by bus or by train. 4- North of the town.

6 Choose the correct answer:
1- patient 2- because
3- bought 4- will

7 Order the words:
1- Gravity usually pulls things to the ground.
2- Why don't you send some photos?

8 Write an email:
To: Azza@ gmail .com
From: Fatima@ hotmail.com
Subject: Doing the shopping
Hi Azza,
How are you, Azza? I'm pleased to write to you. I'm writing to tell about the shopping I did with my mom yesterday. I went to the market on foot with my mom. We went to the butcher's at which we bought some meat. We also went to the greengrocer's where we bought lots of different vegetables. We took a taxi home. It was an enjoyable shopping tour.
That's all. Please write to me and tell me your news.
Best wishes
Fatima

Revision Test (6)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1- largest 2- erupted
3-260 4- forests

2 Listen and complete:
1- astronaut 2- planets
3- problems 4- gravity

3 Read and complete the text:

1- National 2- coast
3- marine 4- protect

4 Read the following text and then:
1- read 2- shelves
3- We can spend it reading in libraries.
4- Miss Rehab, the librarian.

6 Choose the correct answer:
1- might 2- where
3- didn't 4- would

7 Order the words:
1- I would love to be a doctor.
2- Which place would you prefer to visit?

8 Write a paragraph:
"Reading"
Reading is a very useful hobby. It's also very important. I often read a book when I have free time. I think the book is my best friend. I get very useful information when I read books. Every time I read a book I want to know more information. I read books about different things. I think reading is the best way to spend time in a useful way.

Revision Test (7)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1- week 2- lakes
3- sixty seven 4- oasis

2 Listen and complete:
1- inventors 2- important
3- famous 4- wings

3 Read and complete the text:
1- healthy 2- sports
3- relax 4- exercise

4 Read the following text and then:
1- two 2- medicine
3- Because he helps people look after their teeth.
4- Her hobbies are reading books and taking photos.

6 Choose the correct answer:
1- who 2- can't 3- go 4- won't

7 Order the words:
1- When do you use push force?
2- Farmers grew lots of different crops.

8 Write an email:
To: Akram@ yahoo.com
From: Hosam@ net.com
Subject: My school trip
Hi Akram,
How are you, Akram? I'm pleased to write to you. I'm writing to tell about my last school trip. Last week, I went for a school trip to Alexandria with my friends. We went by bus. The bus moved very early. We took lots of different foods, sandwiches and drinks with us. The most interesting thing we visited was Alexandria Library. We were very happy.
That's all. Please write to me and tell me your news.
Best wishes
Hosam

Revision Test (8)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1- jewelry 2- gold 3- mines 4- Eastern

2 Listen and complete:
1- flax 2- flowers 3- linen 4- rope

3 Read and complete the text:
1- pilot 2- moves 3- museum 4- resistance

4 Read the following text and then:
1- moon 2- no
3- They go there by spaceships.
4- They took photographs of it and collected soil and rocks.

6 Choose the correct answer:
1- lucky 2- and 3- cleaned 4- liked

7 Order the words:
1- We can't stay here without food.
2- An oasis is a place in the desert.

8 Write a paragraph:
"Our schools"
Thousands of pupils go to school every day. Schools are very important. We go to school to learn. We learn different subjects at school. Teachers are very clever. We love them very much. We ask and answer lots of questions. We also do sports at school. We make lots of friends at school. We spend very useful and enjoyable time at school.